

7th Edition (2020)



**ELECTRICAL TAC  
WITHOUT COMMENTS**

*This document created by the Florida Department of Business and  
Professional Regulation -  
850-487-1824*

# TAC: Electrical

Total Mods for **Electrical** in **Approved as Submitted**: 3

Total Mods for report: 3

## Sub Code: Building

**E7362**

1

|                           |                       |                     |       |                    |               |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------|--------------------|---------------|
| <b>Date Submitted</b>     | 11/20/2018            | <b>Section</b>      | 422.6 | <b>Proponent</b>   | Bryan Holland |
| <b>Chapter</b>            | 4                     | <b>Affects HVHZ</b> | No    | <b>Attachments</b> | No            |
| <b>TAC Recommendation</b> | Approved as Submitted |                     |       |                    |               |
| <b>Commission Action</b>  | Pending Review        |                     |       |                    |               |

### Comments

**General Comments** No **Alternate Language** No

### Related Modifications

### Summary of Modification

This proposed modification adds essential electrical system criteria for ambulatory care facilities.

### Rationale

The code currently does not provide any guidance on what essential electrical system requirements are needed in an ambulatory care facility. This new Section in 422.6 and 2702.17 will give users of the code a pointer to the applicable requirements in the NFPA 99 and NFPA 70. This also correlates the FBC-B with the FFPC.

### Fiscal Impact Statement

#### Impact to local entity relative to enforcement of code

This proposed modification will not impact the local entity relative to code enforcement.

#### Impact to building and property owners relative to cost of compliance with code

This proposed modification will not change the cost of compliance to building and property owners.

#### Impact to industry relative to the cost of compliance with code

This proposed modification will not change the cost of compliance or impact industry.

#### Impact to small business relative to the cost of compliance with code

This proposed modification will not change the cost of compliance or impact small business.

### Requirements

#### Has a reasonable and substantial connection with the health, safety, and welfare of the general public

This proposed modification is directly connected to the health, safety, and welfare of the general public by adding clarity to the code and pointers to other applicable sections and applicable industry standards.

#### Strengthens or improves the code, and provides equivalent or better products, methods, or systems of construction

This proposed modification improves and strengthens the code by providing the user guidance on where to get information for ambulatory care facility essential electrical system.

#### Does not discriminate against materials, products, methods, or systems of construction of demonstrated capabilities

This proposed modification does not discriminate against materials, products, methods, or systems of construction.

#### Does not degrade the effectiveness of the code

This proposed modification enhances the effectiveness of the code.

422.6 Electrical systems. In ambulatory care facilities, the essential electrical system for electrical components, equipment and systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 27 and NFPA 99.

2702.2.17 Ambulatory care facilities. Essential electrical systems for ambulatory care facilities shall comply with Section 422.6.

**E7350**

2

|                           |                       |                     |     |                    |               |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-----|--------------------|---------------|
| <b>Date Submitted</b>     | 11/20/2018            | <b>Section</b>      | 329 | <b>Proponent</b>   | Bryan Holland |
| <b>Chapter</b>            | 3                     | <b>Affects HVHZ</b> | No  | <b>Attachments</b> | No            |
| <b>TAC Recommendation</b> | Approved as Submitted |                     |     |                    |               |
| <b>Commission Action</b>  | Pending Review        |                     |     |                    |               |

### Comments

|                         |    |                           |    |
|-------------------------|----|---------------------------|----|
| <b>General Comments</b> | No | <b>Alternate Language</b> | No |
|-------------------------|----|---------------------------|----|

### Related Modifications

### Summary of Modification

This proposed modification adds a new section on Stationary Storage Battery Systems to the code.

### Rationale

This proposed modification does not mandate that ESS or stationary storage battery systems be installed, but rather includes basic safety requirements that should be applied if such systems are to be installed and used. The proposed rules are harmonized with and correlate to the applicable provisions of the NFPA 70, NFPA 855, related UL product safety standards, and the FFPC (NFPA 1, NFPA 101).

### Fiscal Impact Statement

- Impact to local entity relative to enforcement of code**  
This proposed modification will not impact the local entity relative to code enforcement.
- Impact to building and property owners relative to cost of compliance with code**  
This proposed modification will not change the cost of compliance to building and property owners.
- Impact to industry relative to the cost of compliance with code**  
This proposed modification will not change the cost of compliance or impact industry.
- Impact to small business relative to the cost of compliance with code**  
This proposed modification will not change the cost of compliance or impact small business.

### Requirements

- Has a reasonable and substantial connection with the health, safety, and welfare of the general public**  
This proposed modification is directly connected to the health, safety, and welfare of the general public by including life, fire, and property safety requirements to the code when an ESS or battery systems is elected to be installed.
- Strengthens or improves the code, and provides equivalent or better products, methods, or systems of construction**  
This proposed modification improves and strengthens the code by providing rules for an emerging and growing industry.
- Does not discriminate against materials, products, methods, or systems of construction of demonstrated capabilities**  
This proposed modification does not discriminate against materials, products, methods, or systems of construction.
- Does not degrade the effectiveness of the code**  
This proposed modification enhances the effectiveness of the code.

SECTION R328STATIONARY STORAGE BATTERY SYSTEMS

R328.1 General. Stationary storage battery system shall comply with the provisions of this section.

R328.2 Equipment listings. Stationary storage battery systems shall be listed and labeled for residential use in accordance with UL 9540.

Exceptions:

1. Where approved, repurposed unlisted battery systems from electric vehicles are allowed to be installed outdoors or in detached sheds located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from exterior walls, property lines and public ways.

2. Battery systems that are an integral part of an electric vehicle are allowed provided that the installation complies with Section 625.48 of NFPA 70.

3. Battery systems less than 1 kWh (3.6 megajoules).

R328.3 Installation. Stationary storage battery systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and their listing, if applicable, and shall not be installed within the habitable space of a dwelling unit.

R328.4 Electrical installation. Stationary storage battery systems shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70. Inverters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1741 or provided as part of the UL 9540 listing. Systems connected to the utility grid shall use inverters listed for utility interaction.

R328.5 Ventilation. Indoor installations of stationary storage battery systems that include batteries that produce hydrogen or other flammable gases during charging shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with Section M1307.4.

|   |                        |                                |
|---|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>Date Submitted</b> 11/6/2018                 | <b>Section</b> 3401    | <b>Proponent</b> Bryan Holland |
| <b>Chapter</b> 34                               | <b>Affects HVHZ</b> No | <b>Attachments</b> Yes         |
| <b>TAC Recommendation</b> Approved as Submitted |                        |                                |
| <b>Commission Action</b> Pending Review         |                        |                                |

**Comments**

|                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>General Comments</b> No | <b>Alternate Language</b> No |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|

**Related Modifications**

**Summary of Modification**

This proposed modification revises the applicability of the FBC-R related to electrical installations by providing a pointer to the NFPA 70 for compliance and requests the rest of Chapter 34 and all of Chapter 35-43 to be placed in "reserved" status.

**Rationale**

Having electrical installation requirements for buildings under the scope of the FBC-R in both the NEC and Chapters 34-43 of the FBC-R has caused confusion and has complicated proper enforcement. Since the rules outlined in Chapters 34-43 are direct extracts from the NEC, these rules are not needed in the FBC-R here in the state of Florida.

**Fiscal Impact Statement**

- Impact to local entity relative to enforcement of code**  
This proposed modification will enhance the enforcement of the code by simply referencing the NEC for electrical installation compliance.
- Impact to building and property owners relative to cost of compliance with code**  
This proposed modification will have little to no impact on building and property owners.
- Impact to industry relative to the cost of compliance with code**  
This proposed modification will not result in any change of cost of compliance with the code.
- Impact to small business relative to the cost of compliance with code**  
This proposed modification will have little to no impact on small business.

**Requirements**

- Has a reasonable and substantial connection with the health, safety, and welfare of the general public**  
This proposed modification has no impact on the health, safety, and welfare of the general public.
- Strengthens or improves the code, and provides equivalent or better products, methods, or systems of construction**  
This proposed modification improves the code usability and enhances proper enforcement of the code.
- Does not discriminate against materials, products, methods, or systems of construction of demonstrated capabilities**  
This proposed modification does not discriminate against materials, products, methods, or systems of construction.
- Does not degrade the effectiveness of the code**  
This proposed modification enhances the effectiveness of the code.

**1st Comment Period History**

|                                      |                           |                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| <b>Proponent</b> Vincent Della Croce | <b>Submitted</b> 1/8/2019 | <b>Attachments</b> No |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|

**Comment:**  
I support the proposed modification as it will ensure the Code includes the most current requirements for electrical installations that provide for the health, safety and general welfare of the public.

E7199-G1

(See attached support file for complete proposed modification)

#### E3401.1 Applicability.

~~Electrical systems, equipment, and components for buildings under the scope of this code shall comply with the applicable provisions of NFPA 70, National Electrical Code. The provisions of Chapters 34 through 43 shall establish the general scope of the electrical system and equipment requirements of this code. Chapters 34 through 43 cover those wiring methods and materials most commonly encountered in the construction of one- and two-family dwellings and structures regulated by this code. Other wiring methods, materials and subject matter covered in NFPA 70 are also allowed by this code.~~

#### E3401.2 Scope.

##### RESERVED

~~Chapters 34 through 43 shall cover the installation of electrical systems, equipment and components indoors and outdoors that are within the scope of this code, including services, power distribution systems, fixtures, appliances, devices and appurtenances. Services within the scope of this code shall be limited to 120/240-volt, 0- to 400-ampere, single-phase systems. These chapters specifically cover the equipment, fixtures, appliances, wiring methods and materials that are most commonly used in the construction or alteration of one- and two-family dwellings and accessory structures regulated by this code. The omission from these chapters of any material or method of construction provided for in the referenced standard NFPA 70 shall not be construed as prohibiting the use of such material or method of construction. Electrical systems, equipment or components not specifically covered in these chapters shall comply with the applicable provisions of NFPA 70.~~

#### E3401.3 Not covered.

##### RESERVED

~~Chapters 34 through 43 do not cover the following:~~

- ~~1. Installations, including associated lighting, under the exclusive control of communications utilities and electric utilities.~~
- ~~2. Services over 400 amperes.~~

#### E3401.4 Additions and alterations.

~~Any addition or alteration to an existing electrical system shall be made in conformity to the provisions of the Florida Building Code, Existing Buildings and NFPA 70, National Electrical Code. Chapters 34 through 43. Where additions subject portions of existing systems to loads exceeding those permitted herein, such portions shall be made to comply with Chapters 34 through 43.~~

## CHAPTER 34 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

This Electrical Part (Chapters 34 through 43) is produced and copyrighted by the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) and is based on the 2014 *National Electrical Code*<sup>®</sup> (NEC<sup>®</sup>) (NFPA 70<sup>®</sup>-2014), copyright 2013, National Fire Protection Association, all rights reserved. Use of the Electrical Part is pursuant to license with the NFPA.

The title *National Electrical Code*<sup>®</sup>, the acronym NEC<sup>®</sup> and the document number NFPA 70<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of the National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, Massachusetts. The section numbers appearing in parentheses or brackets after IRC text are the section numbers of the corresponding text in the *National Electrical Code* (NFPA 70).

### **IMPORTANT NOTICE AND DISCLAIMER CONCERNING THE NEC AND THIS ELECTRICAL PART.**

This Electrical Part is a compilation of provisions extracted from the 2014 edition of the NEC. The NEC, like all NFPA codes and standards, is developed through a consensus standards development process approved by the American National Standards Institute. This process brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve consensus on fire and other safety issues. While the NFPA administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the development of consensus, it does not independently test, evaluate or verify the accuracy of any information or the soundness of any judgments contained in its codes and standards.

The NFPA disclaims liability for any personal injury, property or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, or reliance on the NEC or this Electrical Part. The NFPA also makes no guaranty or warranty as to the accuracy or completeness of any information published in these documents.

In issuing and making the NEC and this Electrical Part available, the NFPA is not undertaking to render professional or other services for or on behalf of any person or entity. Nor is the NFPA undertaking to perform any duty owed by any person or entity to someone else. Anyone using these documents should rely on his or her own independent judgment or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances.

The NFPA has no power, nor does it undertake, to police or enforce compliance with the contents of the NEC and this Electrical Part. Nor does the NFPA list, certify, test, or inspect products, designs, or installations for compliance with these documents. Any certification or other statement of compliance with the requirements of these documents shall not be attributable to the NFPA and is solely the responsibility of the certifier or maker of the statement.

For additional notices and disclaimers concerning NFPA codes and standards see [www.nfpa.org/disclaimers](http://www.nfpa.org/disclaimers).

**SECTION E3401****GENERAL****E3401.1 Applicability.**

~~Electrical systems, equipment, and components for buildings under the scope of this code shall comply with the applicable provisions of NFPA 70, National Electrical Code. The provisions of Chapters 34 through 43 shall establish the general scope of the electrical system and equipment requirements of this code. Chapters 34 through 43 cover those wiring methods and materials most commonly encountered in the construction of one and two family dwellings and structures regulated by this code. Other wiring methods, materials and subject matter covered in NFPA 70 are also allowed by this code.~~

**E3401.2 Scope.**RESERVED

~~Chapters 34 through 43 shall cover the installation of electrical systems, equipment and components indoors and outdoors that are within the scope of this code, including services, power distribution systems, fixtures, appliances, devices and appurtenances. Services within the scope of this code shall be limited to 120/240 volt, 0 to 400 ampere, single phase systems. These chapters specifically cover the equipment, fixtures, appliances, wiring methods and materials that are most commonly used in the construction or alteration of one and two family dwellings and accessory structures regulated by this code. The omission from these chapters of any material or method of construction provided for in the referenced standard NFPA 70 shall not be construed as prohibiting the use of such material or method of construction. Electrical systems, equipment or components not specifically covered in these chapters shall comply with the applicable provisions of NFPA 70.~~

**E3401.3 Not covered.**RESERVED

~~Chapters 34 through 43 do not cover the following:~~

- ~~1. Installations, including associated lighting, under the exclusive control of communications utilities and electric utilities.~~
- ~~2. Services over 400 amperes.~~

**E3401.4 Additions and alterations.**

Any addition or alteration to an existing electrical system shall be made in conformity to the provisions of the Florida Building Code, Existing Buildings and NFPA 70, National Electrical Code. ~~Chapters 34 through 43. Where additions subject portions of existing systems to loads exceeding those permitted herein, such portions shall be made to comply with Chapters 34 through 43.~~

**SECTION E3402  
BUILDING STRUCTURE PROTECTION**

**E3402.1 Drilling and notching.**

RESERVED

~~Wood framed structural members shall not be drilled, notched or altered in any manner except as provided for in this code.~~

**E3402.2 Penetrations of fire-resistance-rated assemblies.**

RESERVED

~~Electrical installations in hollow spaces, vertical shafts and ventilation or air handling ducts shall be made so that the possible spread of fire or products of combustion will not be substantially increased. Electrical penetrations into or through fire resistance rated walls, partitions, floors or ceilings shall be protected by approved methods to maintain the fire resistance rating of the element penetrated. Penetrations of fire resistance rated walls shall be limited as specified in Section R302.4. (300.21)~~

**E3402.3 Penetrations of firestops and draftstops.**

RESERVED

~~Penetrations through fire blocking and draftstopping shall be protected in an approved manner to maintain the integrity of the element penetrated.~~

**SECTION E3403  
INSPECTION AND APPROVAL**

**E3403.1 Approval.**

RESERVED

~~Electrical materials, components and equipment shall be approved. (110.2)~~

**E3403.2 Inspection required.**

RESERVED

~~New electrical work and parts of existing systems affected by new work or alterations shall be inspected by the building official to ensure compliance with the requirements of Chapters 34 through 43.~~

**E3403.3 Listing and labeling.**

RESERVED

~~Electrical materials, components, devices, fixtures and equipment shall be listed for the application, shall bear the label of an approved agency and shall be installed, and used, or both, in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. [110.3(B)]~~

## **SECTION E3404**

### **GENERAL EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS**

#### **E3404.1 Voltages.**

##### RESERVED

~~Throughout Chapters 34 through 43, the voltage considered shall be that at which the circuit operates. (110.4)~~

#### **E3404.2 Interrupting rating.**

##### RESERVED

~~Equipment intended to interrupt current at fault levels shall have a minimum interrupting rating of 10,000 amperes. Equipment intended to interrupt current at levels other than fault levels shall have an interrupting rating at nominal circuit voltage of not less than the current that must be interrupted. (110.9)~~

#### **E3404.3 Circuit characteristics.**

##### RESERVED

~~The overcurrent protective devices, total impedance, equipment short circuit current ratings and other characteristics of the circuit to be protected shall be so selected and coordinated as to permit the circuit protective devices that are used to clear a fault to do so without extensive damage to the electrical equipment of the circuit. This fault shall be assumed to be either between two or more of the circuit conductors or between any circuit conductor and the equipment grounding conductors permitted in Section E3908.8. Listed equipment applied in accordance with its listing shall be considered to meet the requirements of this section. (110.10)~~

#### **E3404.4 Enclosure types.**

##### RESERVED

~~Enclosures, other than surrounding fences or walls, of panelboards, meter sockets, enclosed switches, transfer switches, circuit breakers, pullout switches and motor controllers, rated not over 600 volts nominal and intended for such locations, shall be marked with an enclosure type number as shown in Table E3404.4.~~

~~Table E3404.4 shall be used for selecting these enclosures for use in specific locations other than hazardous (classified) locations. The enclosures are not intended to protect against conditions such as~~

condensation, icing, corrosion, or contamination that might occur within the enclosure or enter through the conduit or unsealed openings. (110.28)

TABLE E3404.4 (Table 110.28)

ENCLOSURE SELECTION

RESERVED

| PROVIDES A DEGREE OF PROTECTION AGAINST THE FOLLOWING ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS | FOR OUTDOOR USE       |    |    |    |     |     |   |    |   |    |
|--|-----------------------|----|----|----|-----|-----|---|----|---|----|
|  | Enclosure type Number |    |    |    |     |     |   |    |   |    |
|  | 3                     | 3R | 3S | 3X | 3RX | 3SX | 4 | 4X | 6 | 6P |
| Incidental contact with the enclosed equipment                                 | X                     | X  | X  | X  | X   | X   | X | X  | X | X  |
| Rain, snow and sleet   | X                     | X  | X  | X  | X   | X   | X | X  | X | X  |
| Sleet <sup>a</sup>   | —                     | —  | X  | —  | —   | X   | — | —  | — | —  |
| Windblown dust   | X                     | —  | X  | X  | —   | X   | X | X  | X | X  |
| Hosedown   | —                     | —  | —  | —  | —   | —   | X | X  | X | X  |
| Corrosive agents   | —                     | —  | —  | X  | X   | X   | — | X  | — | X  |
| Temporary submersion   | —                     | —  | —  | —  | —   | —   | — | —  | X | X  |
| Prolonged submersion   | —                     | —  | —  | —  | —   | —   | — | —  | — | X  |

| PROVIDES A DEGREE OF PROTECTION AGAINST THE FOLLOWING ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS | FOR INDOOR USE        |   |   |    |   |   |    |    |     |    |
|--|-----------------------|---|---|----|---|---|----|----|-----|----|
|  | Enclosure type Number |   |   |    |   |   |    |    |     |    |
|  | 1                     | 2 | 4 | 4X | 5 | 6 | 6P | 12 | 12K | 13 |
| Incidental contact with the enclosed equipment                                 | X                     | X | X | X  | X | X | X  | X  | X   | X  |

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Falling dirt                                    | * | * | * | * | * | * | * | * | * | * |
| Falling liquids and light splashing             | - | * | * | * | * | * | * | * | * | * |
| Circulating dust, lint, fibers and flyings      | - | - | * | * | - | * | * | * | * | * |
| Settling airborne dust, lint, fibers and flings | - | - | * | * | * | * | * | * | * | * |
| Hosedown and splashing water                    | - | - | * | * | - | * | * | - | - | - |
| Oil and coolant seepage                         | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | * | * | * |
| Oil or coolant spraying and splashing           | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | * |
| Corrosive agents                                | - | - | - | * | - | - | * | - | - | - |
| Temporary submersion                            | - | - | - | - | - | * | * | - | - | - |
| Prolonged submersion                            | - | - | - | - | - | - | * | - | - | - |

~~1. a. Mechanism shall be operable when ice covered.~~

~~2. Note 1: The term raintight is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 3, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 4, 4X, 6 and 6P. The term rainproof is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 3R and 3RX. The term watertight is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 4, 4X, 6 and 6P. The term driptight is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 2, 5, 12, 12K and 13. The term dusttight is typically used in conjunction with Enclosure Types 3, 3S, 3SX, 3X, 5, 12, 12K and 13.~~

~~3. Note 2: Ingress protection (IP) ratings are found in ANSI/NEMA 60529, *Degrees of Protection Provided by Enclosures*. IP ratings are not a substitute for enclosure type ratings.~~

**E3404.5 Protection of equipment.**

RESERVED

Equipment not identified for outdoor use and equipment identified only for indoor use, such as “dry locations,” “indoor use only” “damp locations,” or enclosure Type 1, 2, 5, 12, 12K and/or 13, shall be protected against damage from the weather during construction. (110.11)

**E3404.6 Unused openings.**RESERVED

~~Unused openings, other than those intended for the operation of equipment, those intended for mounting purposes, and those permitted as part of the design for listed equipment, shall be closed to afford protection substantially equivalent to the wall of the equipment. Where metallic plugs or plates are used with nonmetallic enclosures they shall be recessed at least  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) from the outer surface of the enclosure. [110.12(A)]~~

**E3404.7 Integrity of electrical equipment.**RESERVED

~~Internal parts of electrical equipment, including busbars, wiring terminals, insulators and other surfaces, shall not be damaged or contaminated by foreign materials such as paint, plaster, cleaners or abrasives, and corrosive residues. There shall not be any damaged parts that might adversely affect safe operation or mechanical strength of the equipment such as parts that are broken, bent, cut, deteriorated by corrosion, chemical action, or overheating. Foreign debris shall be removed from equipment. [110.12(B)]~~

**E3404.8 Mounting.**RESERVED

~~Electrical equipment shall be firmly secured to the surface on which it is mounted. Wooden plugs driven into masonry, concrete, plaster, or similar materials shall not be used. [110.13(A)]~~

**E3404.9 Energized parts guarded against accidental contact.**RESERVED

~~Approved enclosures shall guard energized parts that are operating at 50 volts or more against accidental contact. [110.27(A)]~~

**E3404.10 Prevent physical damage.**RESERVED

~~In locations where electrical equipment is likely to be exposed to physical damage, enclosures or guards shall be so arranged and of such strength as to prevent such damage. [110.27(B)]~~

**E3404.11 Equipment identification.**RESERVED

~~The manufacturer's name, trademark or other descriptive marking by which the organization responsible for the product can be identified shall be placed on all electric equipment. Other markings shall be provided that indicate voltage, current, wattage or other ratings as specified elsewhere in~~

~~Chapters 34 through 43. The marking shall have the durability to withstand the environment involved. [110.21(A)]~~

#### **E3404.12 Field-applied hazard markings.**

##### RESERVED

~~Where caution, warning, or danger signs or labels are required by this code, the labels shall meet the following requirements:~~

- ~~4.—1. The marking shall adequately warn of the hazard using effective words, colors, or symbols or combinations of such.~~
- ~~5.—2. Labels shall be permanently affixed to the equipment or wiring method.~~
- ~~6.—3. Labels shall not be hand written except for portions of labels or markings that are variable, or that could be subject to changes. Labels shall be legible.~~
- ~~7.—4. Labels shall be of sufficient durability to withstand the environment involved. [110.21(B)]~~

#### **E3404.13 Identification of disconnecting means.**

##### RESERVED

~~Each disconnecting means shall be legibly marked to indicate its purpose, except where located and arranged so that the purpose is evident. The marking shall have the durability to withstand the environment involved. [110.22(A)]~~

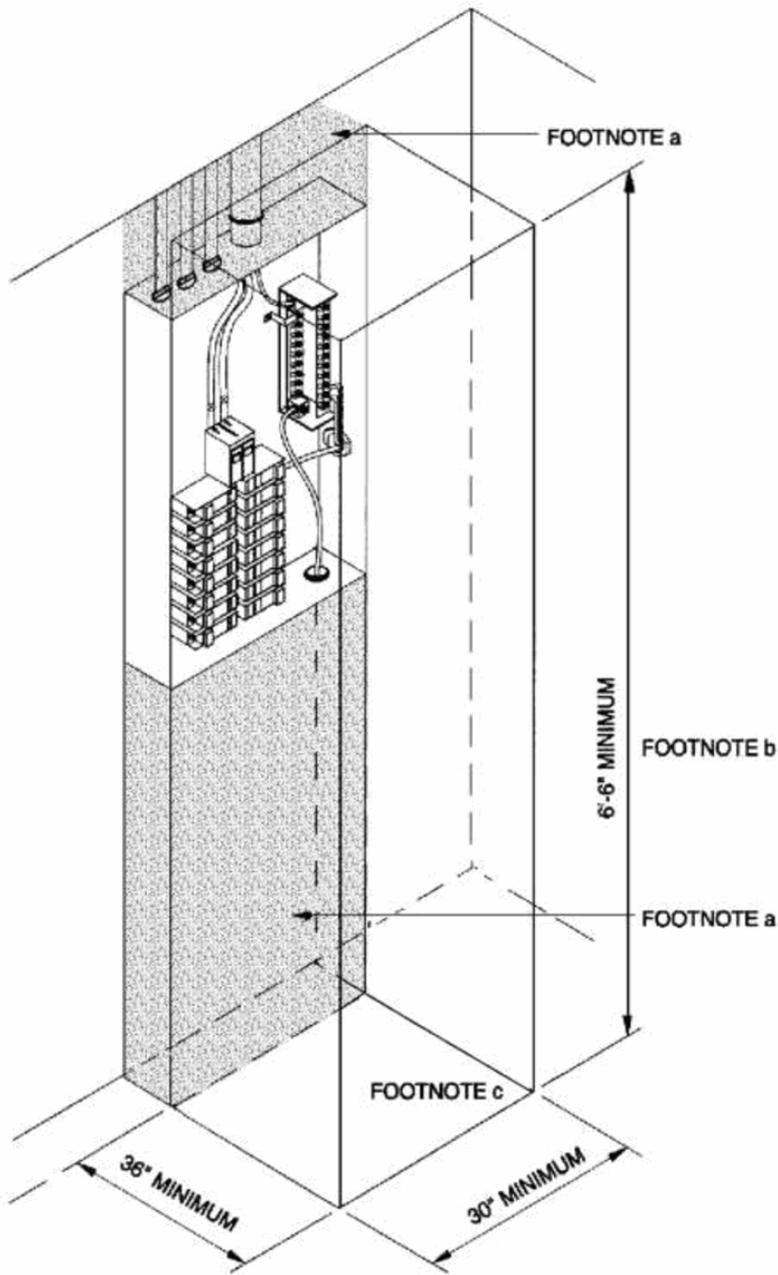
### **SECTION E3405**

#### **EQUIPMENT LOCATION AND CLEARANCES**

##### **E3405.1 Working space and clearances.**

##### RESERVED

~~Access and working space shall be provided and maintained around all electrical equipment to permit ready and safe operation and maintenance of such equipment in accordance with this section and Figure E3405.1. (110.26)~~



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- 8. a. Equipment, piping and ducts foreign to the electrical installation shall not be placed in the shaded areas extending from the floor to a height of 6 feet above the panelboard enclosure, or to the structural ceiling, whichever is lower.

- ~~9. b. The working space shall be clear and unobstructed from the floor to a height of 6.5 feet or the height of the equipment, whichever is greater.~~
- ~~10. c. The working space shall not be designated for storage.~~
- ~~11. d. Panelboards, service equipment and similar enclosures shall not be located in bathrooms, toilet rooms, clothes closets or over the steps of a stairway.~~
- ~~12. e. Such work spaces shall be provided with artificial lighting where located indoors and shall not be controlled by automatic means only.~~

~~FIGURE E3405.1 <sup>a,b,c,d,e</sup>~~

~~WORKING SPACE AND CLEARANCES~~

**E3405.2 Working clearances for energized equipment and panelboards.**

RESERVED

~~Except as otherwise specified in Chapters 34 through 43, the dimension of the working space in the direction of access to panelboards and live parts of other equipment likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing or maintenance while energized shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) in depth. Distances shall be measured from the energized parts where such parts are exposed or from the enclosure front or opening where such parts are enclosed. In addition to the 36-inch dimension (914 mm), the work space shall not be less than 30 inches (762 mm) wide in front of the electrical equipment and not less than the width of such equipment. The work space shall be clear and shall extend from the floor or platform to a height of 6.5 feet (1981 mm) or the height of the equipment, whichever is greater. In all cases, the work space shall allow at least a 90-degree (1.57 rad) opening of equipment doors or hinged panels. Equipment associated with the electrical installation located above or below the electrical equipment shall be permitted to extend not more than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond the front of the electrical equipment. [110.26(A) (1), (2), (3)]~~

**Exceptions:**

13. 1. In existing dwelling units, service equipment and panelboards that are not rated in excess of 200 amperes shall be permitted in spaces where the height of the working space is less than 6.5 feet (1981 mm). [110.26(A)(3) Exception No. 1]
14. 2. Meters that are installed in meter sockets shall be permitted to extend beyond the other equipment. Meter sockets shall not be exempt from the requirements of this section. [110.26(A)(3) Exception No. 2]

**E3405.3 Indoor dedicated panelboard space.**

RESERVED

~~The indoor space equal to the width and depth of the panelboard and extending from the floor to a height of 6 feet (1829 mm) above the panelboard, or to the structural ceiling, whichever is lower, shall be dedicated to the electrical installation. Piping, ducts, leak protection apparatus and other equipment foreign to the electrical installation shall not be installed in such dedicated space. The area above the dedicated space shall be permitted to contain foreign systems, provided that protection is installed to avoid damage to the electrical equipment from condensation, leaks and breaks in such foreign systems (see Figure E3405.1).~~

~~**Exception:** Suspended ceilings with removable panels shall be permitted within the 6 foot (1829 mm) dedicated space.~~

#### **E3405.4 Outdoor dedicated panelboard space.**

##### RESERVED

~~The outdoor space equal to the width and depth of the panelboard, and extending from grade to a height of 6 feet (1.8 m) above the panelboard, shall be dedicated to the electrical installation. Piping and other equipment foreign to the electrical installation shall not be located in this zone.~~

#### **E3405.5 Location of working spaces and equipment.**

##### RESERVED

~~Required working space shall not be designated for storage. Panelboards and overcurrent protection devices shall not be located in clothes closets, in bathrooms, or over the steps of a stairway. [110.26(B), 240.24(D), (E), (F)]~~

#### **E3405.6 Access and entrance to working space.**

##### RESERVED

~~Access shall be provided to the required working space. [110.26(C)(1)]~~

#### **E3405.7 Illumination.**

##### RESERVED

~~Artificial illumination shall be provided for all working spaces for service equipment and panelboards installed indoors and shall not be controlled by automatic means only. Additional lighting outlets shall not be required where the work space is illuminated by an adjacent light source or as permitted by Exception 1 of Section E3903.2 for switched receptacles. [110.26(D)]~~

### **SECTION E3406**

#### **ELECTRICAL CONDUCTORS AND CONNECTIONS**

##### **E3406.1 General.**

RESERVED

This section provides general requirements for conductors, connections and splices. These requirements do not apply to conductors that form an integral part of equipment, such as motors, appliances and similar equipment, or to conductors specifically provided for elsewhere in Chapters 34 through 43. (310.1)

**E3406.2 Conductor material.**RESERVED

Conductors used to conduct current shall be of copper except as otherwise provided in Chapters 34 through 43. Where the conductor material is not specified, the material and the sizes given in these chapters shall apply to copper conductors. Where other materials are used, the conductor sizes shall be changed accordingly. (110.5)

**E3406.3 Minimum size of conductors.**RESERVED

The minimum size of conductors for feeders and branch circuits shall be 14 AWG copper and 12 AWG aluminum. The minimum size of service conductors shall be as specified in Chapter 36. The minimum size of Class 2 remote control, signaling and power limited circuits conductors shall be as specified in Chapter 43. [310.106(A)]

**E3406.4 Stranded conductors.**RESERVED

Where installed in raceways, conductors 8 AWG and larger shall be stranded. A solid 8 AWG conductor shall be permitted to be installed in a raceway only to meet the requirements of Sections E3610.2 and E4204. [310.106(C)]

**E3406.5 Individual conductor insulation.**RESERVED

Except where otherwise permitted in Sections E3605.1 and E3908.9, and E4303, current carrying conductors shall be insulated. Insulated conductors shall have insulation types identified as RHH, RHW, RHW 2, THHN, THHW, THW, THW 2, THWN, THWN 2, TW, UF, USE, USE 2, XHHW or XHHW 2. Insulation types shall be approved for the application. [310.106(C), 310.104]

**E3406.6 Conductors in parallel.**RESERVED

~~Circuit conductors that are connected in parallel shall be limited to sizes 1/0 AWG and larger. Conductors in parallel shall be of the same length; consist of the same conductor material; be the same circular mil area and have the same insulation type. Conductors in parallel shall be terminated in the same manner. Where run in separate raceways or cables, the raceway or cables shall have the same physical characteristics. Where conductors are in separate raceways or cables, the same number of conductors shall be used in each raceway or cable. [310.10(H)]~~

**E3406.7 Conductors of the same circuit.**

RESERVED

~~All conductors of the same circuit and, where used, the grounded conductor and all equipment grounding conductors and bonding conductors shall be contained within the same raceway, cable or cord. [300.3(B)]~~

**E3406.8 Aluminum and copper connections.**

RESERVED

~~Terminals and splicing connectors shall be identified for the material of the conductors joined. Conductors of dissimilar metals shall not be joined in a terminal or splicing connector where physical contact occurs between dissimilar conductors such as copper and aluminum, copper and copper clad aluminum, or aluminum and copper clad aluminum, except where the device is listed for the purpose and conditions of application. Materials such as inhibitors and compounds shall be suitable for the application and shall be of a type that will not adversely affect the conductors, installation or equipment. (110.14)~~

**E3406.9 Fine stranded conductors.**

RESERVED

~~Connectors and terminals for conductors that are more finely stranded than Class B and Class C stranding as shown in Table E3406.9, shall be identified for the specific conductor class or classes. (110.14)~~

**TABLE E3406.9 (Chapter 9, Table 10)**

**CONDUCTOR STRANDING<sup>a</sup>**

| CONDUCTOR SIZE |                 | NUMBER OF STRANDS |         |          |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------|----------|
|                |                 | Copper            |         | Aluminum |
| AWG or kcmil   | mm <sup>2</sup> | Class B           | Class C | Class B  |

|                      |                      |                |                |                          |
|----------------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| <del>24-30</del>     | <del>0.20-0.05</del> | <del>a</del>   | <del>—</del>   | <del>—</del>             |
| <del>22</del>        | <del>0.32</del>      | <del>7</del>   | <del>—</del>   | <del>—</del>             |
| <del>20</del>        | <del>0.52</del>      | <del>10</del>  | <del>—</del>   | <del>—</del>             |
| <del>18</del>        | <del>0.82</del>      | <del>16</del>  | <del>—</del>   | <del>—</del>             |
| <del>16</del>        | <del>1.3</del>       | <del>26</del>  | <del>—</del>   | <del>—</del>             |
| <del>14-2</del>      | <del>2.1-33.6</del>  | <del>7</del>   | <del>19</del>  | <del>7<sup>b</sup></del> |
| <del>1-4/0</del>     | <del>42.4-107</del>  | <del>19</del>  | <del>37</del>  | <del>19</del>            |
| <del>250-500</del>   | <del>127-253</del>   | <del>37</del>  | <del>61</del>  | <del>37</del>            |
| <del>600-1000</del>  | <del>304-508</del>   | <del>61</del>  | <del>91</del>  | <del>61</del>            |
| <del>1250-1500</del> | <del>635-759</del>   | <del>91</del>  | <del>127</del> | <del>91</del>            |
| <del>1750-2000</del> | <del>886-1016</del>  | <del>127</del> | <del>271</del> | <del>127</del>           |

~~15. a. Number of strands vary~~

~~16. b. Aluminum 14 AWG (2.1 mm<sup>2</sup>) is not available.~~

~~17. c. With the permission of Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., this material is reproduced from UL Standard 486A-B, Wire Connectors, which is copyrighted by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Northbrook, Illinois. While use of this material has been authorized, UL shall not be responsible for the manner in which the information is presented, nor for any interpretations thereof~~

#### **E3406.10 Terminals.**

##### RESERVED

~~Connection of conductors to terminal parts shall be made without damaging the conductors and shall be made by means of pressure connectors, including setscrew type, by means of splices to flexible leads, or for conductor sizes of 10 AWG and smaller, by means of wire binding screws or studs and nuts having upturned lugs or the equivalent. Terminals for more than one conductor and terminals for connecting aluminum conductors shall be identified for the application. [110.14(A)]~~

#### **E3406.11 Splices.**

RESERVED

~~Conductors shall be spliced or joined with splicing devices listed for the purpose. Splices and joints and the free ends of conductors shall be covered with an insulation equivalent to that of the conductors or with an insulating device listed for the purpose. Wire connectors or splicing means installed on conductors for direct burial shall be listed for such use. [110.14(B)]~~

**E3406.11.1 Continuity.**RESERVED

~~Conductors in raceways shall be continuous between outlets, boxes, and devices and shall be without splices or taps in the raceway.~~

~~**Exception:** Splices shall be permitted within surface-mounted raceways that have a removable cover. [300.13(A)]~~

**E3406.11.2 Device connections.**RESERVED

~~The continuity of a grounded conductor in multiwire branch circuits shall not be dependent on connection to devices such as receptacles and lampholders. The arrangement of grounding connections shall be such that the disconnection or the removal of a receptacle, luminaire or other device fed from the box does not interfere with or interrupt the grounding continuity. [300.13(B)]~~

**E3406.11.3 Length of conductor for splice or termination.**RESERVED

~~Where conductors are to be spliced, terminated or connected to fixtures or devices, a minimum length of 6 inches (152 mm) of free conductor shall be provided at each outlet, junction or switch point. The required length shall be measured from the point in the box where the conductor emerges from its raceway or cable sheath. Where the opening to an outlet, junction or switch point is less than 8 inches (200 mm) in any dimension, each conductor shall be long enough to extend at least 3 inches (75 mm) outside of such opening. (300.14)~~

**E3406.12 Grounded conductor continuity.**RESERVED

~~The continuity of a grounded conductor shall not depend on connection to a metallic enclosure, raceway or cable armor. [200.2(B)]~~

**E3406.13 Connection of grounding and bonding equipment.**RESERVED

~~The connection of equipment grounding conductors, grounding electrode conductors and bonding jumpers shall be in accordance with Sections E3406.13.1 and E3406.13.2.~~

**E3406.13.1 Permitted methods.**

RESERVED

Equipment grounding conductors, grounding electrode conductors, and bonding jumpers shall be connected by one or more of the following means:

- ~~18. 1. Listed pressure connectors.~~
- ~~19. 2. Terminal bars.~~
- ~~20. 3. Pressure connectors listed as grounding and bonding equipment.~~
- ~~21. 4. Exothermic welding process.~~
- ~~22. 5. Machine screw type fasteners that engage not less than two threads or are secured with a nut.~~
- ~~23. 6. Thread forming machine screws that engage not less than two threads in the enclosure.~~
- ~~24. 7. Connections that are part of a listed assembly.~~
- ~~25. 8. Other listed means. [250.8 (A)]~~

**E3406.13.2 Methods not permitted.**

RESERVED

~~Connection devices or fittings that depend solely on solder shall not be used. [250.8 (B)]~~

**SECTION E3407**

**CONDUCTOR AND TERMINAL IDENTIFICATION**

**E3407.1 Grounded conductors.**

RESERVED

~~Insulated grounded conductors of sizes 6 AWG or smaller shall be identified by a continuous white or gray outer finish or by three continuous white or gray stripes on other than green insulation along the entire length of the conductors. Conductors of sizes 4 AWG or larger shall be identified either by a continuous white or gray outer finish or by three continuous white or gray stripes on other than green insulation along its entire length or at the time of installation by a distinctive white or gray marking at its terminations. This marking shall encircle the conductor or insulation. [200.6(A) & (B)]~~

**E3407.2 Equipment grounding conductors.**RESERVED

~~Equipment grounding conductors of sizes 6 AWG and smaller shall be identified by a continuous green color or a continuous green color with one or more yellow stripes on the insulation or covering, except where bare. Conductors with insulation or individual covering that is green, green with one or more yellow stripes, or otherwise identified as permitted by this section shall not be used for ungrounded or grounded circuit conductors. [250.119]~~

~~Equipment grounding conductors 4 AWG and larger AWG that are not identified as required for conductors of sizes 6 AWG and smaller shall, at the time of installation, be permanently identified as an equipment grounding conductor at each end and at every point where the conductor is accessible, except where such conductors are bare.~~

~~The required identification for conductors 4 AWG and larger shall encircle the conductor and shall be accomplished by one of the following:~~

- ~~26. 1. Stripping the insulation or covering from the entire exposed length.~~
- ~~27. 2. Coloring the exposed insulation or covering green at the termination.~~
- ~~28. 3. Marking the exposed insulation or covering with green tape or green adhesive labels at the termination. [250.119(A)]~~

**Exceptions:**

- ~~29. 1. Conductors 4 AWG and larger shall not be required to be identified in conduit bodies that do not contain splices or unused hubs. [250.119(A)(1) Exception]~~
- ~~30. 2. Power limited, Class 2 or Class 3 circuit cables containing only circuits operating at less than 50 volts shall be permitted to use a conductor with green insulation for other than equipment grounding purposes. [250.119 Exception No. 1]~~

**E3407.3 Ungrounded conductors.**RESERVED

~~Insulation on the ungrounded conductors shall be a continuous color other than white, gray and green. [310.110(C)]~~

~~**Exception:** An insulated conductor that is part of a cable or flexible cord assembly and that has a white or gray finish or a finish marking with three continuous white or gray stripes shall be permitted to be used as an ungrounded conductor where it is permanently reidentified to indicate its use as an ungrounded conductor by marking tape, painting, or other effective means at all terminations and at each location where the conductor is visible and accessible. Identification shall encircle the insulation and shall be a color other than white, gray, and green. [200.7(C)(1)]~~

~~Where used for single pole, 3-way or 4-way switch loops, the reidentified conductor with white or gray insulation or three continuous white or gray stripes shall be used only for the supply to the switch, not as a return conductor from the switch to the outlet. [200.7(C)(2)]~~

#### **E3407.4 Identification of terminals.**

##### RESERVED

~~Terminals for attachment to conductors shall be identified in accordance with Sections E3407.4.1 and E3407.4.2.~~

##### **E3407.4.1 Device terminals.**

##### RESERVED

~~All devices excluding panelboards, provided with terminals for the attachment of conductors and intended for connection to more than one side of the circuit shall have terminals properly marked for identification, except where the terminal intended to be connected to the grounded conductor is clearly evident. [200.10(A)]~~

~~**Exception:** Terminal identification shall not be required for devices that have a normal current rating of over 30 amperes, other than polarized attachment caps and polarized receptacles for attachment caps as required in Section E3407.4.2. [200.10(A) Exception]~~

##### **E3407.4.2 Receptacles, plugs and connectors.**

##### RESERVED

~~Receptacles, polarized attachment plugs and cord connectors for plugs and polarized plugs shall have the terminal intended for connection to the grounded (white) conductor identified. Identification shall be by a metal or metal coating substantially white in color or by the word "white" or the letter "W" located adjacent to the identified terminal. Where the terminal is not visible, the conductor entrance hole for the connection shall be colored white or marked with the word "white" or the letter "W." [200.10(B)]~~

## **CHAPTER35 ELECTRICAL DEFINITIONS**

### RESERVED

#### ~~**SECTION E3501**~~

#### ~~**GENERAL**~~

##### ~~**E3501.1 Scope.**~~

~~This chapter contains definitions that shall apply only to the electrical requirements of Chapters 34 through 43. Unless otherwise expressly stated, the following terms shall, for the purpose of this code,~~

have the meanings indicated in this chapter. Words used in the present tense include the future; the singular number includes the plural and the plural the singular. Where terms are not defined in this section and are defined in Section R202 of this code, such terms shall have the meanings ascribed to them in that section. Where terms are not defined in these sections, they shall have their ordinarily accepted meanings or such as the context implies.

**ACCESSIBLE.** (As applied to equipment.) Admitting close approach; not guarded by locked doors, elevation or other effective means.

**ACCESSIBLE.** (As applied to wiring methods.) Capable of being removed or exposed without damaging the building structure or finish, or not permanently closed in by the structure or finish of the building.

**ACCESSIBLE, READILY.** Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal or inspections, without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to take actions such as to use tools, to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders, etc.

**AMPACITY.** The maximum current in amperes that a conductor can carry continuously under the conditions of use without exceeding its temperature rating.

**APPLIANCE.** Utilization equipment, normally built in standardized sizes or types, that is installed or connected as a unit to perform one or more functions such as clothes washing, air conditioning, food mixing, deep frying, etc.

**APPROVED.** Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

**ARC FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTER.** A device intended to provide protection from the effects of arc faults by recognizing characteristics unique to arcing and by functioning to de-energize the circuit when an arc fault is detected.

**ATTACHMENT PLUG (PLUG CAP) (PLUG).** A device that, by insertion into a receptacle, establishes connection between the conductors of the attached flexible cord and the conductors connected permanently to the receptacle.

**AUTOMATIC.** Performing a function without the necessity of human intervention.

**BATHROOM.** An area, including a basin, with one or more of the following: a toilet, a urinal, a tub, a shower, a bidet, or similar plumbing fixture.

**BONDED (BONDING).** Connected to establish electrical continuity and conductivity.

**BONDING CONDUCTOR OR JUMPER.** A reliable conductor to ensure the required electrical conductivity between metal parts required to be electrically connected.

**BONDING JUMPER (EQUIPMENT).** The connection between two or more portions of the equipment grounding conductor.

~~**BONDING JUMPER, MAIN.** The connection between the grounded circuit conductor and the equipment grounding conductor at the service.~~

~~**BONDING JUMPER, SUPPLY SIDE.** A conductor installed on the supply side of a service or within a service equipment enclosure(s) that ensures the required electrical conductivity between metal parts required to be electrically connected.~~

~~**BRANCH CIRCUIT.** The circuit conductors between the final overcurrent device protecting the circuit and the outlet(s).~~

~~**BRANCH CIRCUIT, APPLIANCE.** A branch circuit that supplies energy to one or more outlets to which appliances are to be connected, and that has no permanently connected luminaires that are not a part of an appliance.~~

~~**BRANCH CIRCUIT, GENERAL PURPOSE.** A branch circuit that supplies two or more receptacle outlets or outlets for lighting and appliances.~~

~~**BRANCH CIRCUIT, INDIVIDUAL.** A branch circuit that supplies only one utilization equipment.~~

~~**BRANCH CIRCUIT, MULTIWIRE.** A branch circuit consisting of two or more ungrounded conductors having voltage difference between them, and a grounded conductor having equal voltage difference between it and each ungrounded conductor of the circuit, and that is connected to the neutral or grounded conductor of the system.~~

~~**CABINET.** An enclosure designed either for surface or flush mounting and provided with a frame, mat or trim in which a swinging door or doors are or may be hung.~~

~~**CIRCUIT BREAKER.** A device designed to open and close a circuit by nonautomatic means and to open the circuit automatically on a predetermined overcurrent without damage to itself when properly applied within its rating.~~

~~**CLOTHES CLOSET.** A nonhabitable room or space intended primarily for storage of garments and apparel.~~

~~**CONCEALED.** Rendered inaccessible by the structure or finish of the building.~~

#### ~~**CONDUCTOR.**~~

~~**Bare.** A conductor having no covering or electrical insulation whatsoever.~~

~~**Covered.** A conductor encased within material of composition or thickness that is not recognized by this code as electrical insulation.~~

~~**Insulated.** A conductor encased within material of composition and thickness that is recognized by this code as electrical insulation.~~

**CONDUIT BODY.** A separate portion of a conduit or tubing system that provides access through a removable cover(s) to the interior of the system at a junction of two or more sections of the system or at a terminal point of the system. Boxes such as FS and FD or larger cast or sheet metal boxes are not classified as conduit bodies.

**CONNECTOR, PRESSURE (SOLDERLESS).** A device that establishes a connection between two or more conductors or between one or more conductors and a terminal by means of mechanical pressure and without the use of solder.

**CONTINUOUS LOAD.** A load where the maximum current is expected to continue for 3 hours or more.

**COOKING UNIT, COUNTER MOUNTED.** A cooking appliance designed for mounting in or on a counter and consisting of one or more heating elements, internal wiring and built in or separately mountable controls.

**COPPER CLAD ALUMINUM CONDUCTORS.** Conductors drawn from a copper clad aluminum rod with the copper metallurgically bonded to an aluminum core. The copper forms a minimum of 10 percent of the cross-sectional area of a solid conductor or each strand of a stranded conductor.

**CUTOUT BOX.** An enclosure designed for surface mounting and having swinging doors or covers secured directly to and telescoping with the walls of the box proper (see "Cabinet").

**DEAD FRONT.** Without live parts exposed to a person on the operating side of the equipment.

**DEMAND FACTOR.** The ratio of the maximum demand of a system, or part of a system, to the total connected load of a system or the part of the system under consideration.

**DEVICE.** A unit of an electrical system that carries or controls electrical energy as its principal function.

**DISCONNECTING MEANS.** A device, or group of devices, or other means by which the conductors of a circuit can be disconnected from their source of supply.

#### **DWELLING.**

**Dwelling unit.** A single unit, providing complete and independent living facilities for one or more persons, including permanent provisions for living, sleeping, cooking and sanitation.

**One-family dwelling.** A building consisting solely of one dwelling unit.

**Two-family dwelling.** A building consisting solely of two dwelling units.

**EFFECTIVE GROUND-FAULT CURRENT PATH.** An intentionally constructed, low impedance electrically conductive path designed and intended to carry current under ground fault conditions from the point of a ground fault on a wiring system to the electrical supply source and that facilitates the operation of the overcurrent protective device or ground fault detectors.

~~**ENCLOSED.** Surrounded by a case, housing, fence or walls that will prevent persons from accidentally contacting energized parts.~~

~~**ENCLOSURE.** The case or housing of apparatus, or the fence or walls surrounding an installation, to prevent personnel from accidentally contacting energized parts or to protect the equipment from physical damage.~~

~~**ENERGIZED.** Electrically connected to, or is, a source of voltage.~~

~~**EQUIPMENT.** A general term including material, fittings, devices, appliances, luminaires, apparatus, machinery and the like used as a part of, or in connection with, an electrical installation.~~

~~**EXPOSED.** (As applied to live parts.) Capable of being inadvertently touched or approached nearer than a safe distance by a person.~~

~~**EXPOSED.** (As applied to wiring methods.) On or attached to the surface or behind panels designed to allow access.~~

~~**EXTERNALLY OPERABLE.** Capable of being operated without exposing the operator to contact with live parts.~~

~~**FEEDER.** All circuit conductors between the service equipment, or the source of a separately derived system, or other power supply source and the final branch circuit overcurrent device.~~

~~**FITTING.** An accessory such as a locknut, bushing or other part of a wiring system that is intended primarily to perform a mechanical rather than an electrical function.~~

~~**GROUND.** The earth.~~

~~**GROUND (GROUNDING).** Connected (connecting) to ground or to a conductive body that extends the ground connection.~~

~~**GROUND (EFFECTIVELY).** Intentionally connected to earth through a ground connection or connections of sufficiently low impedance and having sufficient current carrying capacity to prevent the buildup of voltages that may result in undue hazards to connected equipment or to persons.~~

~~**GROUND CONDUCTOR.** A system or circuit conductor that is intentionally grounded.~~

~~**GROUNDING CONDUCTOR, EQUIPMENT (EGC).** The conductive path(s) that provides a ground fault current path and connects normally noncurrent carrying metal parts of equipment together and, to the system grounded conductor, the grounding electrode conductor or both.~~

~~**GROUNDING ELECTRODE.** A conducting object through which a direct connection to earth is established.~~

~~**GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR.** A conductor used to connect the system grounded conductor or the equipment to a grounding electrode or to a point on the grounding electrode system.~~

**GROUND FAULT CIRCUIT INTERRUPTER.** A device intended for the protection of personnel that functions to deenergize a circuit or portion thereof within an established period of time when a current to ground exceeds the value for a Class A device.

**GROUND FAULT CURRENT PATH.** An electrically conductive path from the point of a ground fault on a wiring system through normally non-current-carrying conductors, equipment, or the earth to the electrical supply source.

Examples of ground fault current paths are any combination of equipment grounding conductors, metallic raceways, metallic cable sheaths, electrical equipment, and any other electrically conductive material such as metal, water, and gas piping; steel framing members; stucco mesh; metal ducting; reinforcing steel; shields of communications cables; and the earth itself.

**GUARDED.** Covered, shielded, fenced, enclosed or otherwise protected by means of suitable covers, casings, barriers, rails, screens, mats or platforms to remove the likelihood of approach or contact by persons or objects to a point of danger.

**IDENTIFIED.** (As applied to equipment.) Recognizable as suitable for the specific purpose, function, use, environment, application, etc., where described in a particular code requirement.

**INTERRUPTING RATING.** The highest current at rated voltage that a device is identified to interrupt under standard test conditions.

**INTERSYSTEM BONDING TERMINATION.** A device that provides a means for connecting intersystem bonding conductors for communications systems to the grounding electrode system.

**ISOLATED.** (As applied to location.) Not readily accessible to persons unless special means for access are used.

**KITCHEN.** An area with a sink and permanent provisions for food preparation and cooking.

**LABELED.** Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol or other identifying mark of an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

**LIGHTING OUTLET.** An outlet intended for the direct connection of a lampholder or luminaire.

**LIGHTING TRACK (Track Lighting).** A manufactured assembly designed to support and energize luminaires that are capable of being readily repositioned on the track. Its length can be altered by the addition or subtraction of sections of track.

**LISTED.** Equipment, materials or services included in a list published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with evaluation of products or services, that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation

~~of services, and whose listing states either that the equipment, material or services meets identified standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.~~

~~**LIVE PARTS.** Energized conductive components.~~

~~**LOCATION, DAMP.** Location protected from weather and not subject to saturation with water or other liquids but subject to moderate degrees of moisture.~~

~~**LOCATION, DRY.** A location not normally subject to dampness or wetness. A location classified as dry may be temporarily subject to dampness or wetness, as in the case of a building under construction.~~

~~**LOCATION, WET.** Installations underground or in concrete slabs or masonry in direct contact with the earth and locations subject to saturation with water or other liquids, such as vehicle washing areas, and locations exposed to weather.~~

~~**LUMINAIRE.** A complete lighting unit consisting of a light source such as a lamp or lamps together with the parts designed to position the light source and connect it to the power supply. A luminaire can include parts to protect the light source or the ballast or to distribute the light. A lampholder itself is not a luminaire.~~

~~**MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLY.** A type of surface, or flush, or freestanding raceway, designed to hold conductors and receptacles, assembled in the field or at the factory.~~

~~**NEUTRAL CONDUCTOR.** The conductor connected to the neutral point of a system that is intended to carry current under normal conditions.~~

~~**NEUTRAL POINT.** The common point on a wye connection in a polyphase system or midpoint on a single phase, 3-wire system, or midpoint of a single phase portion of a 3-phase delta system, or a midpoint of a 3-wire, direct current system.~~

~~**OUTLET.** A point on the wiring system at which current is taken to supply utilization equipment.~~

~~**OVERCURRENT.** Any current in excess of the rated current of equipment or the ampacity of a conductor. Such current might result from overload, short circuit or ground fault.~~

~~**OVERLOAD.** Operation of equipment in excess of normal, full load rating, or of a conductor in excess of rated ampacity that, when it persists for a sufficient length of time, would cause damage or dangerous overheating. A fault, such as a short circuit or ground fault, is not an overload.~~

~~**PANELBOARD.** A single panel or group of panel units designed for assembly in the form of a single panel, including buses and automatic overcurrent devices, and equipped with or without switches for the control of light, heat or power circuits, designed to be placed in a cabinet or cutout box placed in or against a wall, partition or other support and accessible only from the front.~~

~~**PLENUM.** A compartment or chamber to which one or more air ducts are connected and that forms part of the air distribution system.~~

**POWER OUTLET.** An enclosed assembly that may include receptacles, circuit breakers, fuseholders, fused switches, buses and watt hour meter mounting means, intended to supply and control power to mobile homes, recreational vehicles or boats, or to serve as a means for distributing power required to operate mobile or temporarily installed equipment.

**PREMISES WIRING (SYSTEM).** Interior and exterior wiring, including power, lighting, control and signal circuit wiring together with all of their associated hardware, fittings and wiring devices, both permanently and temporarily installed. This includes wiring from the service point or power source to the outlets and wiring from and including the power source to the outlets where there is no service point. Such wiring does not include wiring internal to appliances, luminaires, motors, controllers, and similar equipment.

**QUALIFIED PERSON.** One who has the skills and knowledge related to the construction and operation of the electrical equipment and installations and has received safety training to recognize and avoid the hazards involved.

**RACEWAY.** An enclosed channel of metallic or nonmetallic materials designed expressly for holding wires, cables, or busbars, with additional functions as permitted in this code.

**RAINPROOF.** Constructed, protected or treated so as to prevent rain from interfering with the successful operation of the apparatus under specified test conditions.

**RAIN-TIGHT.** Constructed or protected so that exposure to a beating rain will not result in the entrance of water under specified test conditions.

**RECEPTACLE.** A receptacle is a contact device installed at the outlet for the connection of an attachment plug. A single receptacle is a single contact device with no other contact device on the same yoke. A multiple receptacle is two or more contact devices on the same yoke.

**RECEPTACLE OUTLET.** An outlet where one or more receptacles are installed.

**SERVICE.** The conductors and equipment for delivering energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

**SERVICE CABLE.** Service conductors made up in the form of a cable.

**SERVICE CONDUCTORS.** The conductors from the service point to the service disconnecting means.

**SERVICE CONDUCTORS, OVERHEAD.** The overhead conductors between the service point and the first point of connection to the service entrance conductors at the building or other structure.

**SERVICE CONDUCTORS, UNDERGROUND.** The underground conductors between the service point and the first point of connection to the service entrance conductors in a terminal box, meter, or other enclosure, inside or outside of the building wall.

~~**SERVICE DROP.** The overhead service conductors between the utility electric supply system and the service point.~~

~~**SERVICE ENTRANCE CONDUCTORS, OVERHEAD SYSTEM.** The service conductors between the terminals of the service equipment and a point usually outside of the building, clear of building walls, where joined by tap or splice to the service drop or overhead service conductors.~~

~~**SERVICE ENTRANCE CONDUCTORS, UNDERGROUND SYSTEM.** The service conductors between the terminals of the service equipment and the point of connection to the service lateral or underground service conductors.~~

~~**SERVICE EQUIPMENT.** The necessary equipment, usually consisting of a circuit breaker(s) or switch(es) and fuse(s), and their accessories, connected to the load end of the service conductors to a building or other structure, or an otherwise designated area, and intended to constitute the main control and cutoff of the supply.~~

~~**SERVICE LATERAL.** The underground service conductors between the electric utility supply system and the service point.~~

~~**SERVICE POINT.** The point of connection between the facilities of the serving utility and the premises wiring.~~

~~**STRUCTURE.** That which is built or constructed.~~

~~**SWITCHES.**~~

~~**General use switch.** A switch intended for use in general distribution and branch circuits. It is rated in amperes and is capable of interrupting its rated current at its rated voltage.~~

~~**General use snap switch.** A form of general use switch constructed so that it can be installed in device boxes or on box covers or otherwise used in conjunction with wiring systems recognized by this code.~~

~~**Isolating switch.** A switch intended for isolating an electric circuit from the source of power. It has no interrupting rating and is intended to be operated only after the circuit has been opened by some other means.~~

~~**Motor circuit switch.** A switch, rated in horsepower that is capable of interrupting the maximum operating overload current of a motor of the same horsepower rating as the switch at the rated voltage.~~

~~**UNGROUND.** Not connected to ground or to a conductive body that extends the ground connection.~~

~~**UTILIZATION EQUIPMENT.** Equipment that utilizes electric energy for electronic, electromechanical, chemical, heating, lighting or similar purposes.~~

~~**VENTILATED.** Provided with a means to permit circulation of air sufficient to remove an excess of heat, fumes or vapors.~~

~~**VOLTAGE (OF A CIRCUIT).** The greatest root meansquare (rms) (effective) difference of potential between any two conductors of the circuit concerned.~~

~~**VOLTAGE, NOMINAL.** A nominal value assigned to a circuit or system for the purpose of conveniently designating its voltage class (e.g., 120/240). The actual voltage at which a circuit operates can vary from the nominal within a range that permits satisfactory operation of equipment.~~

~~**VOLTAGE TO GROUND.** For grounded circuits, the voltage between the given conductor and that point or conductor of the circuit that is grounded. For ungrounded circuits, the greatest voltage between the given conductor and any other conductor of the circuit.~~

~~**WATERTIGHT.** Constructed so that moisture will not enter the enclosure under specified test conditions.~~

~~**WEATHERPROOF.** Constructed or protected so that exposure to the weather will not interfere with successful operation.~~

## **CHAPTER 36 SERVICES**

### RESERVED

#### ~~**SECTION E3601 GENERAL SERVICES**~~

##### ~~**E3601.1 Scope.**~~

~~This chapter covers service conductors and equipment for the control and protection of services and their installation requirements. (230.1)~~

##### ~~**E3601.2 Number of services.**~~

~~One and two family dwellings shall be supplied by only one service. (230.2)~~

##### ~~**E3601.3 One building or other structure not to be supplied through another.**~~

~~Service conductors supplying a building or other structure shall not pass through the interior of another building or other structure.~~

##### ~~**E3601.4 Other conductors in raceway or cable.**~~

~~Conductors other than service conductors shall not be installed in the same service raceway or service cable. (230.7)~~

##### ~~**Exceptions:**~~

- ~~1. 1. Grounding electrode conductors and equipment bonding jumpers or conductors.~~
- ~~2. 2. Load management control conductors having overcurrent protection.~~

~~E3601.5 Raceway seal.~~

~~Where a service raceway enters from an underground distribution system, it shall be sealed in accordance with Section E3803.6. (230.8)~~

~~E3601.6 Service disconnect required.~~

~~Means shall be provided to disconnect all conductors in a building or other structure from the service entrance conductors. (230.70)~~

~~E3601.6.1 Marking of service equipment and disconnects.~~

~~Service disconnects shall be permanently marked as a service disconnect. [230.70(B)]~~

~~E3601.6.2 Service disconnect location.~~

~~The service disconnecting means shall be installed at a readily accessible location either outside of a building or inside nearest the point of entrance of the service conductors. Service disconnecting means shall not be installed in bathrooms. Each occupant shall have access to the disconnect serving the dwelling unit in which they reside. [230.70(A)(1), 230.72(C)]~~

~~E3601.7 Maximum number of disconnects.~~

~~The service disconnecting means shall consist of not more than six switches or six circuit breakers mounted in a single enclosure or in a group of separate enclosures. [230.71(A)]~~

**SECTION E3602****SERVICE SIZE AND RATING**~~E3602.1 Ampacity of ungrounded conductors.~~

~~Ungrounded service conductors shall have an ampacity of not less than the load served. For one-family dwellings, the ampacity of the ungrounded conductors shall be not less than 100 amperes, 3-wire. For all other installations, the ampacity of the ungrounded conductors shall be not less than 60 amperes. [230.42(B), 230.79(C) & (D)]~~

~~E3602.2 Service load.~~

~~The minimum load for ungrounded service conductors and service devices that serve 100 percent of the dwelling unit load shall be computed in accordance with Table E3602.2. Ungrounded service conductors and service devices that serve less than 100 percent of the dwelling unit load shall be computed as required for feeders in accordance with Chapter 37. [220.82(A)]~~

## TABLE E3602.2

## MINIMUM SERVICE LOAD CALCULATION

**LOADS AND PROCEDURE**

~~3 volt amperes per square foot of floor area for general lighting and general use receptacle outlets.~~

**Plus**

~~1,500 volt amperes multiplied by total number of 20 ampere rated small appliance and laundry circuits.~~

**Plus**

~~The nameplate volt ampere rating of all fastened in place, permanently connected or dedicated circuit supplied appliances such as ranges, ovens, cooking units, clothes dryers not connected to the laundry branch circuit and water heaters.~~

**Apply the following demand factors to the above subtotal:**

~~The minimum subtotal for the loads above shall be 100 percent of the first 10,000 volt amperes of the sum of the above loads plus 40 percent of any portion of the sum that is in excess of 10,000 voltamperes.~~

**Plus the largest of the following:**

~~One hundred percent of the nameplate rating(s) of the air conditioning and cooling equipment.~~

~~One hundred percent of the nameplate rating(s) of the heat pump where a heat pump is used without any supplemental electric heating.~~

~~One hundred percent of the nameplate rating of the electric thermal storage and other heating systems where the usual load is expected to be continuous at the full nameplate value. Systems qualifying under this selection shall not be figured under any other category in this table.~~

~~One hundred percent of nameplate rating of the heat pump compressor and sixty five percent of the supplemental electric heating load for central electric space heating systems. If the heat pump compressor is prevented from operating at the same time as the supplementary heat, the compressor load does not need to be added to the supplementary heat load for the total central electric spaceheating load.~~

~~Sixty five percent of nameplate rating(s) of electric space heating units if less than four separately controlled units.~~

Forty percent of nameplate rating(s) of electric space heating units of four or more separately controlled units.

~~The minimum total load in amperes shall be the volt-ampere sum calculated above divided by 240 volts.~~

E3602.2.1 Services under 100 amperes.

Services that are not required to be 100 amperes shall be sized in accordance with Chapter 37. [230.42(A), (B), and (C)]

E3602.3 Rating of service disconnect.

The combined rating of all individual service disconnects serving a single dwelling unit shall be not less than the load determined from Table E3602.2 and shall be not less than as specified in Section E3602.1. (230.79 & 230.80)

E3602.4 Voltage rating.

Systems shall be three-wire, 120/240-volt, single-phase with a grounded neutral. [220.82(A)]

### **SECTION E3603**

#### **SERVICE, FEEDER AND GROUNDING**

#### **ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR SIZING**

E3603.1 Grounded and ungrounded service conductor size.

Service and feeder conductors supplied by a single-phase, 120/240-volt system shall be sized in accordance with Sections E3603.1.1 through E3603.1.4 and Table 3705.1.

E3603.1.1 Ungrounded service conductors.

For a service rated at 100 through 400 amperes, the service conductors supplying the entire load associated with a one-family dwelling, or the service conductors supplying the entire load associated with an individual dwelling unit in a two-family dwelling, shall have an ampacity of not less than 83 percent of the service rating.

E3603.1.2 Ungrounded feeder conductors.

For a feeder rated at 100 through 400 amperes, the feeder conductors supplying the entire load associated with a one-family dwelling, or the feeder conductors supplying the entire load associated with an individual dwelling unit in a two-family dwelling, shall have an ampacity of not less than 83 percent of the feeder rating.

E3603.1.3 Feeder size relative to service size.

~~A feeder for an individual dwelling unit shall not be required to have an ampacity greater than that specified in Sections E3603.1.1 and E3603.1.2.~~

~~E3603.1.4 Grounded conductors.~~

~~The grounded conductor ampacity shall be not less than the maximum unbalance of the load and the size of the grounded conductor shall be not smaller than the required minimum grounding electrode conductor size specified in Table E3603.4. [310.15(B)(7)]~~

~~E3603.2 Ungrounded service conductors for accessory buildings and structures.~~

~~Ungrounded conductors for other than dwelling units shall have an ampacity of not less than 60 amperes and shall be sized as required for feeders in Chapter 37. [230.79(D)]~~

~~Exceptions:~~

- ~~3. 1. For limited loads of a single branch circuit, the service conductors shall have an ampacity of not less than 15 amperes. [230.79(A)]~~
- ~~4. 2. For loads consisting of not more than two two-wire branch circuits, the service conductors shall have an ampacity of not less than 30 amperes. [230.79(C)]~~

~~E3603.3 Overload protection.~~

~~Each ungrounded service conductor shall have overload protection. (230.90)~~

~~E3603.3.1 Ungrounded conductor.~~

~~Overload protection shall be provided by an overcurrent device installed in series with each ungrounded service conductor. The overcurrent device shall have a rating or setting not higher than the allowable service or feeder rating specified in Section E3603.1. A set of fuses shall be considered to be all of the fuses required to protect all of the ungrounded conductors of a circuit. Single-pole circuit breakers, grouped in accordance with Section E3601.7, shall be considered as one protective device. [230.90(A)]~~

~~**Exception:** Two to six circuit breakers or sets of fuses shall be permitted as the overcurrent device to provide the overload protection. The sum of the ratings of the circuit breakers or fuses shall be permitted to exceed the ampacity of the service conductors, provided that the calculated load does not exceed the ampacity of the service conductors. [230.90(A) Exception No. 3]~~

~~E3603.3.2 Not in grounded conductor.~~

~~Overcurrent devices shall not be connected in series with a grounded service conductor except where a circuit breaker is used that simultaneously opens all conductors of the circuit. [230.90(B)]~~

~~E3603.3.3 Location.~~

~~The service overcurrent device shall be an integral part of the service disconnecting means or shall be located immediately adjacent thereto. (230.91)~~

~~E3603.4 Grounding electrode conductor size.~~

~~The grounding electrode conductors shall be sized based on the size of the service entrance conductors as required in Table E3603.4. (250.66)~~

TABLE E3603.4

~~GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR SIZE<sup>a, b, c, d, e, f</sup>~~

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <del>SIZE OF LARGEST UNGROUNDED SERVICE ENTRANCE CONDUCTOR OR EQUIVALENT AREA FOR PARALLEL CONDUCTORS (AWG/kcmil)</del> | <del>SIZE OF GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR (AWG/kcmil)</del> |
|---|--|

| <del>Copper</del>       | <del>Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum</del> | <del>Copper</del> | <del>Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum</del> |
|-------------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| <del>2 or smaller</del> | <del>1/0 or smaller</del>                   | <del>8</del>      | <del>6</del>                                |
| <del>1 or 1/0</del>     | <del>2/0 or 3/0</del>                       | <del>6</del>      | <del>4</del>                                |
| <del>2/0 or 3/0</del>   | <del>4/0 or 250</del>                       | <del>4</del>      | <del>2</del>                                |
| <del>Over 3/0</del>     | <del>Over 250</del>                         | <del>2</del>      | <del>1/0</del>                              |
| <del>through 350</del>  | <del>through 500</del>                      |                   |   |
| <del>Over 350</del>     | <del>Over 500</del>                         | <del>1/0</del>    | <del>3/0</del>                              |
| <del>through 600</del>  | <del>through 900</del>                      |                   |   |

- ~~5. a. If multiple sets of service entrance conductors connect directly to a service drop, set of overhead service conductors, set of underground service conductors, or service lateral, the equivalent size of the largest service entrance conductor shall be determined by the largest sum of the areas of the corresponding conductors of each set.~~
- ~~6. b. Where there are no service entrance conductors, the grounding electrode conductor size shall be determined by the equivalent size of the largest service entrance conductor required for the load to be served.~~
- ~~7. c. Where protected by a ferrous metal raceway, grounding electrode conductors shall be electrically bonded to the ferrous metal raceway at both ends. [250.64(E)(1)]~~

- ~~8. d. An 8 AWG grounding electrode conductor shall be protected with rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid polyvinyl chloride (Type PVC) nonmetallic conduit, rigid thermosetting resin (Type RTRC) nonmetallic conduit, electrical metallic tubing or cable armor. [250.64(B)]~~
- ~~9. e. Where not protected, 6 AWG grounding electrode conductor shall closely follow a structural surface for physical protection. The supports shall be spaced not more than 24 inches on center and shall be within 12 inches of any enclosure or termination. [250.64(B)]~~
- ~~10. f. Where the sole grounding electrode system is a ground rod or pipe as covered in Section E3608.3, the grounding electrode conductor shall not be required to be larger than 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum. Where the sole grounding electrode system is the footing steel as covered in Section E3608.1.2, the grounding electrode conductor shall not be required to be larger than 4 AWG copper conductor. [250.66(A) and (B)]~~

#### ~~E3603.5 Temperature limitations.~~

~~Except where the equipment is marked otherwise, conductor ampacities used in determining equipment termination provisions shall be based on Table E3705.1. [110.14(C)(1)]~~

### ~~SECTION E3604~~

#### ~~OVERHEAD SERVICE AND SERVICE-ENTRANCE CONDUCTOR INSTALLATION~~

##### ~~E3604.1 Clearances on buildings.~~

~~Open conductors and multiconductor cables without an overall outer jacket shall have a clearance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the sides of doors, porches, decks, stairs, ladders, fire escapes and balconies, and from the sides and bottom of windows that open. See Figure E3604.1. [230.9(A)]~~

~~For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.~~

#### ~~FIGURE E3604.1~~

##### ~~CLEARANCES FROM BUILDING OPENINGS~~

##### ~~E3604.2 Vertical clearances.~~

~~Overhead service conductors shall not have ready access and shall comply with Sections E3604.2.1 and E3604.2.2. (230.24)~~

##### ~~E3604.2.1 Above roofs.~~

Conductors shall have a vertical clearance of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above the roof surface. The vertical clearance above the roof level shall be maintained for a distance of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) in all directions from the edge of the roof. See Figure E3604.2.1. [230.24(A)]

**Exceptions:**

- ~~11. 1. Conductors above a roof surface subject to pedestrian traffic shall have a vertical clearance from the roof surface in accordance with Section E3604.2.2. [230.24(A) Exception No. 1]~~
- ~~12. 2. Where the roof has a slope of 4 inches (102 mm) in 12 inches (305 mm), or greater, the minimum clearance shall be 3 feet (914 mm). [230.24(A) Exception No. 2]~~
- ~~13. 3. The minimum clearance above only the overhanging portion of the roof shall not be less than 18 inches (457 mm) where not more than 6 feet (1829 mm) of overhead service conductor length passes over 4 feet (1219 mm) or less of roof surface measured horizontally and such conductors are terminated at a through the roof raceway or approved support. [230.24(A) Exception No. 3]~~
- ~~14. 4. The requirement for maintaining the vertical clearance for a distance of 3 feet (914 mm) from the edge of the roof shall not apply to the final conductor span where the service drop is attached to the side of a building. [230.24(A) Exception No. 4]~~
- ~~15. 5. Where the voltage between conductors does not exceed 300 and the roof area is guarded or isolated, a reduction in clearance to 3 feet (914 mm) shall be permitted. [230.24(A) Exception No. 5]~~

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE E3604.2.1

**CLEARANCES FROM ROOFS**

~~E3604.2.2 Vertical clearance from grade.~~

~~Overhead service conductors shall have the following minimum clearances from final grade:~~

- ~~16. 1. For conductors supported on and cabled together with a grounded bare messenger wire, the minimum vertical clearance shall be 10 feet (3048 mm) at the electric service entrance to buildings, at the lowest point of the drip loop of the building electric entrance, and above areas or sidewalks accessed by pedestrians only. Such clearance shall be measured from final grade or other accessible surfaces.~~
- ~~17. 2. Twelve feet (3658 mm) over residential property and driveways.~~

~~18. 3. Eighteen feet (5486 mm) over public streets, alleys, roads or parking areas subject to truck traffic. [(230.24(B)(1), (2), and (4))]~~

~~E3604.3 Point of attachment.~~

~~The point of attachment of the overhead service conductors to a building or other structure shall provide the minimum clearances as specified in Sections E3604.1 through E3604.2.2. The point of attachment shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above finished grade. (230.26)~~

~~E3604.4 Means of attachment.~~

~~Multiconductor cables used for overhead service conductors shall be attached to buildings or other structures by fittings approved for the purpose. (230.27)~~

~~E3604.5 Service masts as supports.~~

~~A service mast used for the support of service drop or overhead service conductors shall comply with Sections E3604.5.1 and E3604.5.2. Only power service drop or overhead service conductors shall be attached to a service mast.~~

~~E3604.5.1 Strength.~~

~~The service mast shall be of adequate strength or shall be supported by braces or guys to safely withstand the strain imposed by the service drop or overhead service conductors. Hubs intended for use with a conduit that serves as a service mast shall be identified for use with service entrance equipment.~~

~~E3604.5.2 Attachment.~~

~~Service drop or overhead service conductors shall not be attached to a service mast at a point between a coupling and a weatherhead or the end of the conduit, where the coupling is located above the last point of securement of the building or other structure or is located above the building or other structure. [230.28(A) & (B)]~~

~~E3604.6 Supports over buildings.~~

~~Service conductors passing over a roof shall be securely supported. Where practicable, such supports shall be independent of the building. (230.29)~~

~~**SECTION E3605**~~

~~**SERVICE ENTRANCE CONDUCTORS**~~

~~E3605.1 Insulation of service entrance conductors.~~

~~Service entrance conductors entering or on the exterior of buildings or other structures shall be insulated in accordance with Section E3406.5. (230.41)~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~19.1. A copper grounded conductor shall not be required to be insulated where it is:~~

- ~~1. 1.1. In a raceway or part of a service cable assembly,~~
- ~~2. 1.2. Directly buried in soil of suitable condition, or~~
- ~~3. 1.3. Part of a cable assembly listed for direct burial without regard to soil conditions.~~

~~20.2. An aluminum or copper clad aluminum grounded conductor shall not be required to be insulated where part of a cable or where identified for direct burial or utilization in underground raceways. (230.41 Exception)~~

#### ~~E3605.2 Wiring methods for services.~~

~~Service entrance wiring methods shall be installed in accordance with the applicable requirements in Chapter 38. (230.43)~~

#### ~~E3605.3 Spliced conductors.~~

~~Service entrance conductors shall be permitted to be spliced or tapped. Splices shall be made in enclosures or, if directly buried, with listed underground splice kits. Conductor splices shall be made in accordance with Chapters 34, 37, 38 and 39. (230.33, 230.46)~~

#### ~~E3605.4 Protection of underground service entrance conductors.~~

~~Underground service entrance conductors shall be protected against physical damage in accordance with Chapter 38. (230.32)~~

#### ~~E3605.5 Protection of all other service cables.~~

~~Aboveground service entrance cables, where subject to physical damage, shall be protected by one or more of the following: rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, Schedule 30 PVC conduit, electrical metallic tubing or other approved means. [230.50(1)]~~

#### ~~E3605.6 Locations exposed to direct sunlight.~~

~~Insulated conductors and cables used where exposed to direct rays of the sun shall comply with one of the following:~~

- ~~21. 1. The conductors and cables shall be listed, or listed and marked, as being sunlight resistant.~~
- ~~22. 2. The conductors and cables are covered with insulating material, such as tape or sleeving, that is listed, or listed and marked, as being sunlight resistant. [310.10(D)]~~

#### ~~E3605.7 Mounting supports.~~

~~Service entrance cables shall be supported by straps or other approved means within 12 inches (305 mm) of every service head, gooseneck or connection to a raceway or enclosure and at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (762 mm). [230.51(A)]~~

~~E3605.8 Raceways to drain.~~

~~Where exposed to the weather, raceways enclosing service entrance conductors shall be suitable for use in wet locations and arranged to drain. Where embedded in masonry, raceways shall be arranged to drain. [230.53]~~

~~E3605.9 Overhead service locations.~~

~~Connections at service heads shall be in accordance with Sections E3605.9.1 through E3605.9.7. [230.54]~~

~~E3605.9.1 Rain-tight service head.~~

~~Service raceways shall be equipped with a service head at the point of connection to service drop or overhead conductors. The service head shall be listed for use in wet locations. [230.54(A)]~~

~~E3605.9.2 Service cable, service head or gooseneck.~~

~~Service entrance cable shall be equipped with a service head or shall be formed into a gooseneck in an approved manner. The service head shall be listed for use in wet locations. [230.54(B)]~~

~~E3605.9.3 Service head location.~~

~~Service heads, and goosenecks in service entrance cables, shall be located above the point of attachment of the service drop or overhead service conductors to the building or other structure. [230.54(C)]~~

~~**Exception:** Where it is impracticable to locate the service head or gooseneck above the point of attachment, the service head or gooseneck location shall be not more than 24 inches (610 mm) from the point of attachment. [230.54(C) Exception]~~

~~E3605.9.4 Separately bushed openings.~~

~~Service heads shall have conductors of different potential brought out through separately bushed openings. [230.54(E)]~~

~~E3605.9.5 Drip loops.~~

~~Drip loops shall be formed on individual conductors. To prevent the entrance of moisture, service-entrance conductors shall be connected to the service drop or overhead conductors either below the level of the service head or below the level of the termination of the service-entrance cable sheath. [230.54(F)]~~

~~E3605.9.6 Conductor arrangement.~~

~~Service entrance and overhead service conductors shall be arranged so that water will not enter service raceways or equipment. [230.54(G)]~~

~~E3605.9.7Secured.~~

~~Service entrance cables shall be held securely in place. [230.54(D)]~~

#### ~~SECTION E3606~~

##### ~~SERVICE EQUIPMENT—GENERAL~~

~~E3606.1Service equipment enclosures.~~

~~Energized parts of service equipment shall be enclosed. (230.62)~~

~~E3606.2Working space.~~

~~The working space in the vicinity of service equipment shall be not less than that specified in Chapter 34. (110.26)~~

~~E3606.3Available short circuit current.~~

~~Service equipment shall be suitable for the maximum fault current available at its supply terminals, but not less than 10,000 amperes. (110.9)~~

~~E3606.4Marking.~~

~~Service equipment shall be marked to identify it as being suitable for use as service equipment. Service equipment shall be listed. Individual meter socket enclosures shall not be considered as service equipment. (230.66)~~

#### ~~SECTION E3607~~

##### ~~SYSTEM GROUNDING~~

~~E3607.1System service ground.~~

~~The premises wiring system shall be grounded at the service with a grounding electrode conductor connected to a grounding electrode system as required by this code. Grounding electrode conductors shall be sized in accordance with Table E3603.4. [250.20(B)(1) and 250.24(A)]~~

~~E3607.2Location of grounding electrode conductor connection.~~

~~The grounding electrode conductor shall be connected to the grounded service conductor at any accessible point from the load end of the overhead service conductors, service drop, underground service conductors, or service lateral to and including the terminal or bus to which the grounded service conductor is connected at the service disconnecting means. A grounding connection shall not be made to any grounded circuit conductor on the load side of the service disconnecting means, except as provided in Section E3607.3.2. [250.24(A)(1) and (A)(5)]~~

~~E3607.3 Buildings or structures supplied by feeder(s) or branch circuit(s).~~

~~Buildings or structures supplied by feeder(s) or branch circuit(s) shall have a grounding electrode or grounding electrode system installed in accordance with Section E3608. The grounding electrode conductor(s) shall be connected in a manner specified in Section E3607.3.1 or, for existing premises wiring systems only, Section E3607.3.2. Where there is no existing grounding electrode, the grounding electrode(s) required in Section E3608 shall be installed. [250.32(A)]~~

~~**Exception:** A grounding electrode shall not be required where only one branch circuit, including a multiwire branch circuit, supplies the building or structure and the branch circuit includes an equipment grounding conductor for grounding the noncurrent-carrying parts of all equipment. For the purposes of this section, a multiwire branch circuit shall be considered as a single branch circuit. [250.32(A) Exception]~~

~~E3607.3.1 Equipment grounding conductor.~~

~~An equipment grounding conductor as described in Section E3908 shall be run with the supply conductors and connected to the building or structure disconnecting means and to the grounding electrode(s). The equipment grounding conductor shall be used for grounding or bonding of equipment, structures or frames required to be grounded or bonded. The equipment grounding conductor shall be sized in accordance with Section E3908.12. Any installed grounded conductor shall not be connected to the equipment grounding conductor or to the grounding electrode(s). [250.32(B) and Table 250.122]~~

~~E3607.3.2 Grounded conductor, existing premises.~~

~~For installations made in compliance with previous editions of this code that permitted such connection and where an equipment grounding conductor is not run with the supply conductors to the building or structure, there are no continuous metallic paths bonded to the grounding system in both buildings or structures involved, and ground fault protection of equipment has not been installed on the supply side of the feeder(s), the grounded conductor run with the supply to the buildings or structure shall be connected to the building or structure disconnecting means and to the grounding electrode(s) and shall be used for grounding or bonding of equipment, structures, or frames required to be grounded or bonded. Where used for grounding in accordance with this provision, the grounded conductor shall be not smaller than the larger of:~~

~~23. 1. That required by Section E3704.3.~~

~~24. 2. That required by Section E3908.12. [250.32(B)(1) Exception]~~

~~E3607.4 Grounding electrode conductor.~~

~~A grounding electrode conductor shall be used to connect the equipment grounding conductors, the service equipment enclosures, and the grounded service conductor to the grounding electrode(s). This conductor shall be sized in accordance with Table E3603.4. [250.24(D)]~~

~~E3607.5 Main bonding jumper.~~

~~An unspliced main bonding jumper shall be used to connect the equipment grounding conductor(s) and the service disconnect enclosure to the grounded conductor of the system within the enclosure for each service disconnect. [250.24(B)]~~

~~E3607.6 Common grounding electrode.~~

~~Where an ac system is connected to a grounding electrode in or at a building or structure, the same electrode shall be used to ground conductor enclosures and equipment in or on that building or structure. Where separate services, feeders or branch circuits supply a building and are required to be connected to a grounding electrode(s), the same grounding electrode(s) shall be used. Two or more grounding electrodes that are effectively bonded together shall be considered as a single grounding electrode system. (250.58)~~

~~SECTION E3608~~~~GROUNDING ELECTRODE SYSTEM~~~~E3608.1 Grounding electrode system.~~

~~All electrodes specified in Sections E3608.1.1, E3608.1.2, E3608.1.3, E3608.1.4 E3608.1.5 and E3608.1.6 that are present at each building or structure served shall be bonded together to form the grounding electrode system. Where none of these electrodes are present, one or more of the electrodes specified in Sections E3608.1.3, E3608.1.4, E3608.1.5 and E3608.1.6 shall be installed and used. (250.50)~~

~~**Exception:** Concrete encased electrodes of existing buildings or structures shall not be required to be part of the grounding electrode system where the steel reinforcing bars or rods are not accessible for use without disturbing the concrete. (250.50 Exception)~~

~~E3608.1.1 Metal underground water pipe.~~

~~A metal underground water pipe that is in direct contact with the earth for 10 feet (3048 mm) or more, including any well casing effectively bonded to the pipe and that is electrically continuous, or made electrically continuous by bonding around insulating joints or insulating pipe to the points of connection of the grounding electrode conductor and the bonding conductors, shall be considered as a grounding electrode (see Section E3608.1). [250.52(A)(1)]~~

~~E3608.1.1.1 Interior metal water piping.~~

~~Interior metal water piping located more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the entrance to the building shall not be used as a conductor to interconnect electrodes that are part of the grounding electrode system. [250.68(C)(1)]~~

~~E3608.1.1.2 Installation.~~

~~Continuity of the grounding path or the bonding connection to interior piping shall not rely on water meters, filtering devices and similar equipment. A metal underground water pipe shall be supplemented by an additional electrode of a type specified in Sections E3608.1.2 through E3608.1.6. The supplemental electrode shall be bonded to the grounding electrode conductor, the grounded service-entrance conductor, a nonflexible grounded service raceway, any grounded service enclosure or to the equipment grounding conductor provided in accordance with Section E3607.3.1. Where the supplemental electrode is a rod, pipe or plate electrode in accordance with Section E3608.1.4 or E3608.1.5, it shall comply with Section E3608.4.~~

~~Where the supplemental electrode is a rod, pipe or plate electrode in accordance with Section E3608.1.4 or E3608.1.5, that portion of the bonding jumper that is the sole connection to the supplemental grounding electrode shall not be required to be larger than 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum wire. [250.53(D) and (E)]~~

~~E3608.1.2 Concrete-encased electrode.~~

~~A concrete-encased electrode consisting of at least 20 feet (6096 mm) of either of the following shall be considered as a grounding electrode:~~

~~25. 1. One or more bare or zinc galvanized or other electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods not less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch (13 mm) in diameter, installed in one continuous 20 foot (6096 mm) length, or if in multiple pieces connected together by the usual steel tie wires, exothermic welding, welding, or other effective means to create a 20 foot (6096 mm) or greater length.~~

~~26. 2. A bare copper conductor not smaller than 4 AWG.~~

~~Metallic components shall be encased by at least 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete and shall be located horizontally within that portion of a concrete foundation or footing that is in direct contact with the earth or within vertical foundations or structural components or members that are in direct contact with the earth.~~

~~Where multiple concrete-encased electrodes are present at a building or structure, only one shall be required to be bonded into the grounding electrode system. [250.52(A)(3)]~~

~~E3608.1.3 Ground rings.~~

~~A ground ring encircling the building or structure, in direct contact with the earth at a depth below the earth's surface of not less than 30 inches (762 mm), consisting of at least 20 feet (6096 mm) of bare copper conductor not smaller than 2 AWG shall be considered as a grounding electrode. [250.52(A)(4)]~~

~~E3608.1.4 Rod and pipe electrodes.~~

~~Rod and pipe electrodes not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) in length and consisting of the following materials shall be considered as a grounding electrode:~~

~~27. 1. Grounding electrodes of pipe or conduit shall not be smaller than trade size  $\frac{3}{4}$  (metric designator 21) and, where of iron or steel, shall have the outer surface galvanized or otherwise metal coated for corrosion protection.~~

~~28. 2. Rod type grounding electrodes of stainless steel and copper or zinc coated steel shall be at least  $\frac{5}{8}$  inch (15.9 mm) in diameter unless listed. [250.52(A)(5)]~~

#### ~~E3608.1.4.1 Installation.~~

~~The rod and pipe electrodes shall be installed such that at least 8 feet (2438 mm) of length is in contact with the soil. They shall be driven to a depth of not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) except that, where rock bottom is encountered, electrodes shall be driven at an oblique angle not to exceed 45 degrees (0.79 rad) from the vertical or shall be buried in a trench that is at least 30 inches (762 mm) deep. The upper end of the electrodes shall be flush with or below ground level except where the aboveground end and the grounding electrode conductor attachment are protected against physical damage. [250.53(G)]~~

#### ~~E3608.1.5 Plate electrodes.~~

~~A plate electrode that exposes not less than 2 square feet (0.186 m<sup>2</sup>) of surface to exterior soil shall be considered as a grounding electrode. Electrodes of bare or conductively coated iron or steel plates shall be at least  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) in thickness. Solid, uncoated electrodes of nonferrous metal shall be at least 0.06 inch (1.5 mm) in thickness. Plate electrodes shall be installed not less than 30 inches (762 mm) below the surface of the earth. [250.52(A)(7)]~~

#### ~~E3608.1.6 Other electrodes.~~

~~In addition to the grounding electrodes specified in Sections E3608.1.1 through E3608.1.5, other listed grounding electrodes shall be permitted. [250.52(A)(6)]~~

#### ~~E3608.2 Bonding jumper.~~

~~The bonding jumper(s) used to connect the grounding electrodes together to form the grounding electrode system shall be installed in accordance with Sections E3610.2, and E3610.3, shall be sized in accordance with Section E3603.4, and shall be connected in the manner specified in Section E3611.1. [250.53(C)]~~

#### ~~E3608.3 Rod, pipe and plate electrode requirements.~~

~~Where practicable, rod, pipe and plate electrodes shall be embedded below permanent moisture level. Such electrodes shall be free from nonconductive coatings such as paint or enamel. Where more than one such electrode is used, each electrode of one grounding system shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) from any other electrode of another grounding system. Two or more grounding electrodes that are effectively bonded together shall be considered as a single grounding electrode system. That portion of a bonding jumper that is the sole connection to a rod, pipe or plate electrode shall not be required to be larger than 6 AWG copper or 4 AWG aluminum wire. [250.53(A)(1), 250.53(B), 250.53(C)]~~

~~E3608.4~~Supplemental electrode required.

A single rod, pipe, or plate electrode shall be supplemented by an additional electrode of a type specified in Sections ~~E3608.1.2~~ through ~~E3608.1.6~~. The supplemental electrode shall be bonded to one of the following:

- ~~29. 1.~~ A rod, pipe, or plate electrode.
- ~~30. 2.~~ A grounding electrode conductor.
- ~~31. 3.~~ A grounded service entrance conductor.
- ~~32. 4.~~ A nonflexible grounded service raceway.
- ~~33. 5.~~ A grounded service enclosure.

Where multiple rod, pipe, or plate electrodes are installed to meet the requirements of this section, they shall not be less than 6 feet (1829 mm) apart. ~~[250.53(A)(2) and (A)(3)]~~

**Exception:** Where a single rod, pipe, or plate grounding electrode has a resistance to earth of 25 ohms or less, the supplemental electrode shall not be required. ~~[250.53(A)(2) Exception]~~

~~E3608.5~~Aluminum electrodes.

Aluminum electrodes shall not be permitted. ~~[250.52(B)(2)]~~

~~E3608.6~~Metal underground gas piping system.

A metal underground gas piping system shall not be used as a grounding electrode. ~~[250.52(B)(1)]~~

## ~~SECTION~~E3609

### BONDING

~~E3609.1~~General.

Bonding shall be provided where necessary to ensure electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any fault current likely to be imposed. ~~(250.90)~~

~~E3609.2~~Bonding of equipment for services.

The noncurrent carrying metal parts of the following equipment shall be effectively bonded together:

- ~~34. 1.~~ Raceways or service cable armor or sheath that enclose, contain, or support service conductors.
- ~~35. 2.~~ Service enclosures containing service conductors, including meter fittings, and boxes, interposed in the service raceway or armor. ~~[250.92(A)]~~

~~E3609.3~~Bonding for other systems.

An intersystem bonding termination for connecting intersystem bonding conductors required for other systems shall be provided external to enclosures at the service equipment or metering equipment enclosure and at the disconnecting means for any additional buildings or structures. The intersystem bonding termination shall comply with all of the following:

- ~~36. 1. It shall be accessible for connection and inspection.~~
- ~~37. 2. It shall consist of a set of terminals with the capacity for connection of not less than three intersystem bonding conductors.~~
- ~~38. 3. It shall not interfere with opening of the enclosure for a service, building or structure disconnecting means, or metering equipment.~~
- ~~39. 4. Where located at the service equipment, it shall be securely mounted and electrically connected to an enclosure for the service equipment, to the meter enclosure, or to an exposed nonflexible metallic service raceway, or shall be mounted at one of these enclosures and connected to the enclosure or to the grounding electrode conductor with a 6 AWG or larger copper conductor.~~
- ~~40. 5. Where located at the disconnecting means for a building or structure, it shall be securely mounted and electrically connected to the metallic enclosure for the building or structure disconnecting means, or shall be mounted at the disconnecting means and connected to the metallic enclosure or to the grounding electrode conductor with a 6 AWG or larger copper conductor.~~
- ~~41. 6. It shall be listed as grounding and bonding equipment. (250.94)~~

#### ~~E3609.4 Method of bonding at the service.~~

~~Bonding jumpers meeting the requirements of this chapter shall be used around impaired connections, such as reducing washers or oversized, concentric, or eccentric knockouts. Standard locknuts or bushings shall not be the only means for the bonding required by this section but shall be permitted to be installed to make mechanical connections of raceways. Electrical continuity at service equipment, service raceways and service conductor enclosures shall be ensured by one or more of the methods specified in Sections E3609.4.1 through E3609.4.4.~~

#### ~~E3609.4.1 Grounded service conductor.~~

~~Equipment shall be bonded to the grounded service conductor in a manner provided in this code.~~

#### ~~E3609.4.2 Threaded connections.~~

~~Equipment shall be bonded by connections using threaded couplings or threaded hubs on enclosures. Such connections shall be made wrench tight.~~

#### ~~E3609.4.3 Threadless couplings and connectors.~~

~~Equipment shall be bonded by threadless couplings and connectors for metal raceways and metal clad cables. Such couplings and connectors shall be made wrench tight. Standard locknuts or bushings shall not be used for the bonding required by this section.~~

~~E3609.4.4 Other devices.~~

~~Equipment shall be bonded by other listed devices, such as bonding type locknuts, bushings and bushings with bonding jumpers. [250.92(B)]~~

~~E3609.5 Sizing supply side bonding jumper and main bonding jumper.~~

~~The bonding jumper shall not be smaller than the sizes shown in Table E3603.4 for grounding electrode conductors. Where the service entrance conductors are paralleled in two or more raceways or cables, and an individual supply side bonding jumper is used for bonding these raceways or cables, the supply side bonding jumper for each raceway or cable shall be selected from Table E3603.4 based on the size of the ungrounded supply conductors in each raceway or cable. A single supply side bonding jumper installed for bonding two or more raceways or cables shall be sized in accordance with Table E3603.4 based on the largest set of parallel ungrounded supply conductors. [250.102(C)]~~

~~E3609.6 Metal water piping bonding.~~

~~The metal water piping system shall be bonded to the service equipment enclosure, the grounded conductor at the service, the grounding electrode conductor where of sufficient size, or to the one or more grounding electrodes used. The bonding jumper shall be sized in accordance with Table E3603.4. The points of attachment of the bonding jumper(s) shall be accessible. [250.104(A) and 250.104(A)(1)]~~

~~E3609.7 Bonding other metal piping.~~

~~Where installed in or attached to a building or structure, metal piping systems, including gas piping, capable of becoming energized shall be bonded to the service equipment enclosure, the grounded conductor at the service, the grounding electrode conductor where of sufficient size, or to the one or more grounding electrodes used. The bonding conductor(s) or jumper(s) shall be sized in accordance with Table E3908.12 using the rating of the circuit capable of energizing the piping. The equipment grounding conductor for the circuit that is capable of energizing the piping shall be permitted to serve as the bonding means. The points of attachment of the bonding jumper(s) shall be accessible. [250.104(B)]~~

**SECTION E3610**

**GROUNDING ELECTRODE CONDUCTORS**

~~E3610.1 Continuous.~~

~~The grounding electrode conductor shall be installed in one continuous length without splices or joints and shall run to any convenient grounding electrode available in the grounding electrode system where the other electrode(s), if any, are connected by bonding jumpers in accordance with Section E3608.2, or to one or more grounding electrode(s) individually. The grounding electrode conductor shall be sized for~~

~~the largest grounding electrode conductor required among all of the electrodes connected to it. [250.64(C)]~~

~~**Exception:** Splicing of the grounding electrode conductor by irreversible compression type connectors listed as grounding and bonding equipment or by the exothermic welding process shall not be prohibited. [250.64(C)(1)]~~

~~E3610.2 Securing and protection against physical damage.~~

~~Where exposed, a grounding electrode conductor or its enclosure shall be securely fastened to the surface on which it is carried. Grounding electrode conductors shall be permitted to be installed on or through framing members. A 4 AWG or larger conductor shall be protected where exposed to physical damage. A 6 AWG grounding conductor that is free from exposure to physical damage shall be permitted to be run along the surface of the building construction without metal covering or protection where it is and securely fastened to the construction; otherwise, it shall be in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC), nonmetallic conduit, reinforced thermosetting resin (RTRC) nonmetallic conduit, electrical metallic tubing or cable armor. Grounding electrode conductors smaller than 6 AWG shall be in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) nonmetallic conduit, reinforced thermosetting resin (RTRC) nonmetallic conduit, electrical metallic tubing or cable armor. Grounding electrode conductors and grounding electrode bonding jumpers shall not be required to comply with Section E3803. [250.64(B)]~~

~~Bare aluminum or copper clad aluminum grounding electrode conductors shall not be used where in direct contact with masonry or the earth or where subject to corrosive conditions. Where used outside, aluminum or copper clad aluminum grounding electrode conductors shall not be installed within 18 inches (457 mm) of the earth. [250.64(A)]~~

~~E3610.3 Raceways and enclosures for grounding electrode conductors.~~

~~Ferrous metal raceways and enclosures for grounding electrode conductors shall be electrically continuous from the point of attachment to cabinets or equipment to the grounding electrode, and shall be securely fastened to the ground clamp or fitting. Nonferrous metal raceways and enclosures shall not be required to be electrically continuous. Ferrous metal raceways and enclosures shall be bonded at each end of the raceway or enclosure to the grounding electrode or to the grounding electrode conductor. Bonding methods in compliance with Section E3609.4 for installations at service equipment locations and with E3609.4.2 through E3609.4.4 for other than service equipment locations shall apply at each end and to all intervening ferrous raceways, boxes, and enclosures between the cabinets or equipment and the grounding electrode. The bonding jumper for a grounding electrode conductor raceway shall be the same size or larger than the required enclosed grounding electrode conductor.~~

~~Where a raceway is used as protection for a grounding conductor, the installation shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 38. [250.64(E)(4)]~~

~~E3610.4 Prohibited use.~~

An equipment grounding conductor shall not be used as a grounding electrode conductor. (250.121)

**Exception:** A wire-type equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted to serve as both an equipment grounding conductor and a grounding electrode conductor where installed in accordance with the applicable requirements for both the equipment grounding conductor and the grounding electrode conductor in Chapters 36 and 39. Where used as a grounding electrode conductor, the wiretype equipment grounding conductor shall be installed and arranged in a manner that will prevent objectionable current. [250.121 Exception, 250.6(A)]

### **SECTION 3611**

#### **GROUNDING-ELECTRODE CONDUCTOR CONNECTION TO THE GROUNDING ELECTRODES**

##### **E3611.1 Methods of grounding conductor connection to electrodes.**

The grounding or bonding conductor shall be connected to the grounding electrode by exothermic welding, listed lugs, listed pressure connectors, listed clamps or other listed means. Connections depending on solder shall not be used. Ground clamps shall be listed for the materials of the grounding electrode and the grounding electrode conductor and, where used on pipe, rod or other buried electrodes, shall also be listed for direct soil burial or concrete encasement. Not more than one conductor shall be connected to the grounding electrode by a single clamp or fitting unless the clamp or fitting is listed for multiple conductors. One of the methods indicated in the following items shall be used:

42. 1. A pipe fitting, pipe plug or other approved device screwed into a pipe or pipe fitting.
43. 2. A listed bolted clamp of cast bronze or brass, or plain or malleable iron.
44. 3. For indoor communications purposes only, a listed sheet metal strap type ground clamp having a rigid metal base that seats on the electrode and having a strap of such material and dimensions that it is not likely to stretch during or after installation.
45. 4. Other equally substantial approved means. (250.70)

##### **E3611.2 Accessibility.**

All mechanical elements used to terminate a grounding electrode conductor or bonding jumper to the grounding electrodes that are not buried or concrete-encased shall be accessible. [250.68(A) and 250.68(A) Exception]

##### **E3611.3 Effective grounding path.**

The connection of the grounding electrode conductor or bonding jumper shall be made in a manner that will ensure a permanent and effective grounding path. Where necessary to ensure effective grounding for a metal piping system used as a grounding electrode, effective bonding shall be provided around insulated joints and sections and around any equipment that is likely to be disconnected for repairs or

~~replacement. Bonding jumpers shall be of sufficient length to permit removal of such equipment while retaining the integrity of the grounding path. [250.68(B)]~~

#### ~~E3611.4 Interior metal water piping.~~

~~Where grounding electrode conductors and bonding jumpers are connected to interior metal water piping as a means to extend the grounding electrode conductor connection to an electrode(s), such piping shall be located not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the point of entry into the building.~~

~~Where interior metal water piping is used as a conductor to interconnect electrodes that are part of the grounding electrode system, such piping shall be located not more than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the point of entry into the building. [250.68(C)(1)]~~

#### ~~E3611.5 Protection of ground clamps and fittings.~~

~~Ground clamps or other fittings shall be approved for applications without protection or shall be protected from physical damage by installing them where they are not likely to be damaged or by enclosing them in metal, wood or equivalent protective coverings. (250.10)~~

#### ~~E3611.6 Clean surfaces.~~

~~Nonconductive coatings (such as paint, enamel and lacquer) on equipment to be grounded shall be removed from threads and other contact surfaces to ensure good electrical continuity or shall be connected by fittings that make such removal unnecessary. (250.12)~~

## CHAPTER 37 BRANCH CIRCUIT AND FEEDER REQUIREMENTS

### RESERVED

#### ~~SECTION E3701~~

#### ~~GENERAL~~

##### ~~E3701.1 Scope.~~

~~This chapter covers branch circuits and feeders and specifies the minimum required branch circuits, the allowable loads and the required overcurrent protection for branch circuits and feeders that serve less than 100 percent of the total dwelling unit load. Feeder circuits that serve 100 percent of the dwelling unit load shall be sized in accordance with the procedures in Chapter 36. [310.15(B)(7)(2)]~~

##### ~~E3701.2 Branch circuit and feeder ampacity.~~

~~Branch circuit and feeder conductors shall have ampacities not less than the maximum load to be served. Where a branch circuit or a feeder supplies continuous loads or any combination of continuous and noncontinuous loads, the minimum branch circuit or feeder conductor size, before the application of any adjustment or correction factors, shall have an allowable ampacity equal to or greater than the noncontinuous load plus 125 percent of the continuous load. [210.19(A)(1)(a) and 215.2(A)(1)(a)]~~

~~Exception: The grounded conductors of feeders that are not connected to an overcurrent device shall be permitted to be sized at 100 percent of the continuous and noncontinuous load. [215.1(A)(1) Exception No. 2]~~

~~E3701.3 Selection of ampacity.~~

~~Where more than one calculated or tabulated ampacity could apply for a given circuit length, the lowest value shall be used. [310.15(A)(2)]~~

~~Exception: Where two different ampacities apply to adjacent portions of a circuit, the higher ampacity shall be permitted to be used beyond the point of transition, a distance equal to 10 feet (3048 mm) or 10 percent of the circuit length figured at the higher ampacity, whichever is less. [310.15(A)(2) Exception]~~

~~Exception]~~

~~E3701.4 Branch circuits with more than one receptacle.~~

~~Conductors of branch circuits supplying more than one receptacle for cord and plug connected portable loads shall have ampacities of not less than the rating of the branch circuit. [210.19(A)(2)]~~

~~E3701.5 Multiwire branch circuits.~~

~~All conductors for multiwire branch circuits shall originate from the same panelboard or similar distribution equipment. Except where all ungrounded conductors are opened simultaneously by the branch circuit overcurrent device, multiwire branch circuits shall supply only line to neutral loads or only one appliance. [210.4(A) and 210.4(C)]~~

~~E3701.5.1 Disconnecting means.~~

~~Each multiwire branch circuit shall be provided with a means that will simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors at the point where the branch circuit originates. [210.4(B)]~~

~~E3701.5.2 Grouping.~~

~~The ungrounded and grounded circuit conductors of each multiwire branch circuit shall be grouped by cable ties or similar means in at least one location within the panelboard or other point of origination. [210.4(D)]~~

~~Exception: Grouping shall not be required where the circuit conductors enter from a cable or raceway unique to the circuit, thereby making the grouping obvious, or where the conductors are identified at their terminations with numbered wire markers corresponding to their appropriate circuit number. [210.4(D) Exception].~~

## ~~SECTION E3702~~

### ~~BRANCH CIRCUIT RATINGS~~

~~E3702.1 Branch circuit voltage limitations.~~

~~The voltage ratings of branch circuits that supply luminaires or receptacles for cord and plug connected loads of up to 1,400 volt amperes or of less than 1/4 horsepower (0.186 kW) shall be limited to a maximum rating of 120 volts, nominal, between conductors.~~

~~Branch circuits that supply cord and plug connected or permanently connected utilization equipment and appliances rated at over 1,440 volt amperes or 1/4 horsepower (0.186 kW) and greater shall be rated at 120 volts or 240 volts, nominal. [210.6(A), (B), and (C)]~~

~~E3702.2 Branch circuit ampere rating.~~

~~Branch circuits shall be rated in accordance with the maximum allowable ampere rating or setting of the overcurrent protection device. The rating for other than individual branch circuits shall be 15, 20, 30, 40 and 50 amperes. Where conductors of higher ampacity are used, the ampere rating or setting of the specified over current device shall determine the circuit rating. (210.3)~~

~~E3702.3 Fifteen and 20 ampere branch circuits.~~

~~A 15 or 20 ampere branch circuit shall be permitted to supply lighting units, or other utilization equipment, or a combination of both. The rating of any one cord and plug connected utilization equipment not fastened in place shall not exceed 80 percent of the branch circuit ampere rating. The total rating of utilization equipment fastened in place, other than luminaires, shall not exceed 50 percent of the branch circuit ampere rating where lighting units, cord and plug connected utilization equipment not fastened in place, or both, are also supplied. [210.23(A)(1) and (2)]~~

~~E3702.4 Thirty ampere branch circuits.~~

~~A 30 ampere branch circuit shall be permitted to supply fixed utilization equipment. A rating of any one cord and plug connected utilization equipment shall not exceed 80 percent of the branch circuit ampere rating. [210.23(B)]~~

~~E3702.5 Branch circuits serving multiple loads or outlets.~~

~~General purpose branch circuits shall supply lighting outlets, appliances, equipment or receptacle outlets, and combinations of such. Multioutlet branch circuits serving lighting or receptacles shall be limited to a maximum branch circuit rating of 20 amperes. [210.23(A), (B), and (C)]~~

~~E3702.6 Branch circuits serving a single motor.~~

~~Branch circuit conductors supplying a single motor shall have an ampacity not less than 125 percent of the motor full load current rating. [430.22(A)]~~

~~E3702.7 Branch circuits serving motor operated and combination loads.~~

~~For circuits supplying loads consisting of motor operated utilization equipment that is fastened in place and that has a motor larger than 1/8 horsepower (0.093 kW) in combination with other loads, the total~~

~~calculated load shall be based on 125 percent of the largest motor load plus the sum of the other loads. [220.18(A)]~~

~~E3702.8 Branch circuit inductive and LED lighting loads.~~

~~For circuits supplying luminaires having ballasts or LED drivers, the calculated load shall be based on the total ampere ratings of such units and not on the total watts of the lamps. [220.18(B)]~~

~~E3702.9 Branch circuit load for ranges and cooking appliances.~~

~~It shall be permissible to calculate the branch circuit load for one range in accordance with Table E3704.2(2). The branch circuit load for one wall mounted oven or one counter mounted cooking unit shall be the nameplate rating of the appliance. The branch circuit load for a counter mounted cooking unit and not more than two wall mounted ovens all supplied from a single branch circuit and located in the same room shall be calculated by adding the nameplate ratings of the individual appliances and treating the total as equivalent to one range. (220.55 Note 4)~~

~~E3702.9.1 Minimum branch circuit for ranges.~~

~~Ranges with a rating of 8.75 kVA or more shall be supplied by a branch circuit having a minimum rating of 40 amperes. [210.19(A)(3)]~~

~~E3702.10 Branch circuits serving heating loads.~~

~~Electric space heating and water heating appliances shall be considered to be continuous loads. Branch circuits supplying two or more outlets for fixed electric space heating equipment shall be rated 15, 20, 25 or 30 amperes. [424.3(A)]~~

~~E3702.11 Branch circuits for air conditioning and heat pump equipment.~~

~~The ampacity of the conductors supplying multimotor and combination load equipment shall be not less than the minimum circuit ampacity marked on the equipment. The branch circuit overcurrent device rating shall be the size and type marked on the appliance. [440.4(B), 440.35, 440.62(A)]~~

~~E3702.12 Branch circuits serving room air conditioners.~~

~~A room air conditioner shall be considered as a single motor unit in determining its branch circuit requirements where all the following conditions are met:~~

- ~~1. It is cord and attachment plug connected.~~
- ~~2. The rating is not more than 40 amperes and 250 volts; single phase.~~
- ~~3. Total rated load current is shown on the room air conditioner nameplate rather than individual motor currents.~~

~~4. The rating of the branch circuit short circuit and ground fault protective device does not exceed the ampacity of the branch circuit conductors, or the rating of the branch circuit conductors, or the rating of the receptacle, whichever is less. [440.62(A)]~~

~~E3702.12.1 Where no other loads are supplied.~~

~~The total marked rating of a cord and attachment plug connected room air conditioner shall not exceed 80 percent of the rating of a branch circuit where no other appliances are also supplied. [440.62(B)]~~

~~E3702.12.2 Where lighting units or other appliances are also supplied.~~

~~The total marked rating of a cord and attachment plug connected room air conditioner shall not exceed 50 percent of the rating of a branch circuit where lighting or other appliances are also supplied. Where the circuitry is interlocked to prevent simultaneous operation of the room air conditioner and energization of other outlets on the same branch circuit, a cord and attachment plug connected room air conditioner shall not exceed 80 percent of the branch circuit rating. [440.62(C)]~~

~~E3702.13 Electric vehicle branch circuit.~~

~~Outlets installed for the purpose of charging electric vehicles shall be supplied by a separate branch circuit. Such circuit shall not supply other outlets. (210.17)~~

~~E3702.14 Branch circuit requirement — summary.~~

~~The requirements for circuits having two or more outlets, or receptacles, other than the receptacle circuits of Sections E3703.2, E3703.3 and E3703.4, are summarized in Table E3702.14. Branch circuits in dwelling units shall supply only loads within that dwelling unit or loads associated only with that dwelling unit. Branch circuits installed for the purpose of lighting, central alarm, signal, communications or other purposes for public or common areas of a two-family dwelling shall not be supplied from equipment that supplies an individual dwelling unit. (210.24 and 210.25)~~

~~TABLE E3702.14 (Table 210.24)~~

~~BRANCH CIRCUIT REQUIREMENTS SUMMARY<sup>a, b</sup>~~

|  | CIRCUIT RATING |        |        |
|--|----------------|--------|--------|
|  | 15 amp         | 20 amp | 30 amp |
| Conductors: Minimum size (AWG) circuit conductors            | 14             | 12     | 10     |
| Maximum overcurrent protection device rating (Ampere rating) | 15             | 20     | 30     |

|   |                     |                   |        |
|---|---------------------|-------------------|--------|
| Outlet devices: Lampholders permitted Receptacle rating (amperes) | Any type 15 maximum | Any type 15 or 20 | N/A 30 |
| Maximum load (amperes)  | 15                  | 20                | 30     |

a. These gages are for copper conductors.

b. N/A means not allowed.

### SECTION E3703

#### REQUIRED BRANCH CIRCUITS

##### E3703.1 Branch circuits for heating.

Central heating equipment other than fixed electric space heating shall be supplied by an individual branch circuit. Permanently connected air conditioning equipment, and auxiliary equipment directly associated with the central heating equipment such as pumps, motorized valves, humidifiers and electrostatic air cleaners, shall not be prohibited from connecting to the same branch circuit as the central heating equipment. (422.12 and 422.12 Exceptions No. 1 and No. 2)

##### E3703.2 Kitchen and dining area receptacles.

A minimum of two 20-ampere-rated branch circuits shall be provided to serve all wall and floor receptacle outlets located in the kitchen, pantry, breakfast area, dining area or similar area of a dwelling. The kitchen countertop receptacles shall be served by a minimum of two 20-ampere-rated branch circuits, either or both of which shall also be permitted to supply other receptacle outlets in the same kitchen, pantry, breakfast and dining area including receptacle outlets for refrigeration appliances. [210.11(C)(1) and 210.52(B)(1) and (B)(2)]

Exception: The receptacle outlet for refrigeration appliances shall be permitted to be supplied from an individual branch circuit rated 15 amperes or greater. [210.52(B)(1) Exception No. 2]

##### E3703.3 Laundry circuit.

A minimum of one 20-ampere-rated branch circuit shall be provided for receptacles located in the laundry area and shall serve only receptacle outlets located in the laundry area. [210.11(C)(2)]

##### E3703.4 Bathroom branch circuits.

A minimum of one 20-ampere branch circuit shall be provided to supply bathroom receptacle outlet(s). Such circuits shall have no other outlets. [210.11(C)(3)]

Exception: Where the 20-ampere circuit supplies a single bathroom, outlets for other equipment within the same bathroom shall be permitted to be supplied in accordance with Section E3702. [210.11(C)(3) Exception]

~~E3703.5~~ Number of branch circuits.

~~The minimum number of branch circuits shall be determined from the total calculated load and the size or rating of the circuits used. The number of circuits shall be sufficient to supply the load served. In no case shall the load on any circuit exceed the maximum specified by Section E3702. [210.11(A)]~~

~~E3703.6~~ Branch circuit load proportioning.

~~Where the branch circuit load is calculated on a volt amperes per square foot (m2) basis, the wiring system, up to and including the branch circuit panelboard(s), shall have the capacity to serve not less than the calculated load. This load shall be evenly proportioned among multioutlet branch circuits within the panelboard(s). Branch circuit overcurrent devices and circuits shall only be required to be installed to serve the connected load. [210.11(B)]~~

~~SECTION E3704~~

~~FEEDER REQUIREMENTS~~

~~E3704.1~~ Conductor size.

~~Feeder conductors that do not serve 100 percent of the dwelling unit load and branch circuit conductors shall be of a size sufficient to carry the load as determined by this chapter. Feeder conductors shall not be required to be larger than the service entrance conductors that supply the dwelling unit. The load for feeder conductors that serve as the main power feeder to a dwelling unit shall be determined as specified in Chapter 36 for services. [310.15(B)(7)(2) and (3)]~~

~~E3704.2~~ Feeder loads.

~~The minimum load in volt amperes shall be calculated in accordance with the load calculation procedure prescribed in Table E3704.2(1). The associated table demand factors shall be applied to the actual load to determine the minimum load for feeders. (220.40)~~

~~TABLE E3704.2(1) (Table 220.12, 220.14, Table 220.42, 220.50, 220.51, 220.52, 220.53, 220.54, 220.55, and 220.60)~~

~~FEEDER LOAD CALCULATION~~

~~LOAD CALCULATION PROCEDURE~~

~~Lighting and receptacles: A unit load of not less than 3 VA per square foot of total floor area shall constitute the lighting and 120 volt, 15- and 20-ampere general use receptacle load. 1,500 VA shall be added for each 20-ampere branch circuit serving receptacles in the kitchen, dining room, pantry, breakfast area and laundry area.~~

~~APPLIED DEMAND FACTOR~~

~~100 percent of first 3,000 VA or less and 35 percent of that in excess of 3,000 VA.~~

Plus

~~Appliances and motors: The nameplate rating load of all fastened in place appliances other than dryers, ranges, air conditioning and space heating equipment.~~

~~100 percent of load for three or less appliances. 75 percent of load for four or more appliances.~~

Plus

~~Fixed motors: Full load current of motors plus 25 percent of the full load current of the largest motor.~~

Plus

~~Electric clothes dryer: The dryer load shall be 5,000 VA for each dryer circuit or the nameplate rating load of each dryer, whichever is greater.~~

Plus

~~Cooking appliances: The nameplate rating of ranges, wall mounted ovens, counter mounted cooking units and other cooking appliances rated in excess of 1.75 kVA shall be summed.~~

~~Demand factors shall be as allowed by Table E3704.2(2).~~

~~Plus the largest of either the heating or cooling load~~

~~Largest of the following two selections:~~

~~1-100 percent of the nameplate rating(s) of the air conditioning and cooling, including heat pump compressors.~~

~~2-100 percent of the fixed electric space heating.~~

~~For SI: 1 square foot = 0.0929 m<sup>2</sup>.~~

~~TABLE E3704.2(2) (220.55 and Table 220.55)~~

~~DEMAND LOADS FOR ELECTRIC RANGES, WALL MOUNTED OVENS, COUNTER MOUNTED COOKING UNITS AND OTHER COOKING APPLIANCES OVER 13/4 kVA RATING<sup>a, b</sup>~~

| <del>NUMBER OF APPLIANCES</del> | <del>MAXIMUM DEMAND<sup>b, c</sup></del> | <del>DEMAND FACTORS (percent)<sup>d</sup></del>             |
|---------------------------------|--|---|
|                                 | <del>Column A maximum 12</del>           | <del>Column B less than 31/2    Column C 31/2 to 83/4</del> |

|   | kVA rating | kVA rating | kVA rating |
|---|------------|------------|------------|
| 4 | 8kVA       | 80         | 80         |
| 2 | 11kVA      | 75         | 65         |

a. ~~Column A shall be used in all cases except as provided for in Footnote d.~~

b. ~~For ranges all having the same rating and individually rated more than 12 kVA but not more than 27 kVA, the maximum demand in Column A shall be increased 5 percent for each additional kVA of rating or major fraction thereof by which the rating of individual ranges exceeds 12 kVA.~~

c. ~~For ranges of unequal ratings and individually rated more than 8.75 kVA, but none exceeding 27 kVA, an average value of rating shall be computed by adding together the ratings of all ranges to obtain the total connected load (using 12 kVA for any ranges rated less than 12 kVA) and dividing by the total number of ranges; and then the maximum demand in Column A shall be increased 5 percent for each kVA or major fraction thereof by which this average value exceeds 12 kVA.~~

d. ~~Over 1.75 kVA through 8.75 kVA. As an alternative to the method provided in Column A, the nameplate ratings of all ranges rated more than 1.75 kVA but not more than 8.75 kVA shall be added and the sum shall be multiplied by the demand factor specified in Column B or C for the given number of appliances.~~

#### ~~E3704.3 Feeder neutral load.~~

~~The feeder neutral load shall be the maximum unbalance of the load determined in accordance with this chapter. The maximum unbalanced load shall be the maximum net calculated load between the neutral and any one ungrounded conductor. For a feeder or service supplying electric ranges, wall mounted ovens, counter mounted cooking units and electric dryers, the maximum unbalanced load shall be considered as 70 percent of the load on the ungrounded conductors. [220.61(A) and (B)]~~

#### ~~E3704.4 Lighting and general use receptacle load.~~

~~A unit load of not less than 3 volt amperes shall constitute the minimum lighting and general use receptacle load for each square foot of floor area (33 VA for each square meter of floor area). The floor area for each floor shall be calculated from the outside dimensions of the building. The calculated floor area shall not include open porches, garages, or unused or unfinished spaces not adaptable for future use. [220.12, Table 220.12, and 220.14(j)]~~

#### ~~E3704.5 Ampacity and calculated loads.~~

~~The calculated load of a feeder shall be not less than the sum of the loads on the branch circuits supplied, as determined by Section E3704, after any applicable demand factors permitted by Section E3704 have been applied. (220.40)~~

~~E3704.6 Equipment grounding conductor.~~

~~Where a feeder supplies branch circuits in which equipment grounding conductors are required, the feeder shall include or provide an equipment grounding conductor that is one or more or a combination of the types specified in Section E3908.8, to which the equipment grounding conductors of the branch circuits shall be connected. Where the feeder supplies a separate building or structure, the requirements of Section E3607.3.1 shall apply. (215.6)~~

~~SECTION E3705~~

~~CONDUCTOR SIZING~~

~~AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTION~~

~~E3705.1 General.~~

~~Ampacities for conductors shall be determined based in accordance with Table E3705.1 and Sections E3705.2 and E3705.3. [310.15(A)]~~

~~TABLE E3705.1~~

~~ALLOWABLE AMPACITIES~~

| CONDUCTOR SIZE | CONDUCTOR TEMPERATURE RATING |      |   |                                  |      |   | CONDUCTOR SIZE |
|----------------|------------------------------|------|---|----------------------------------|------|---|----------------|
|                | 60°C                         | 75°C | 90°C  | 60°C                             | 75°C | 90°C  |                |
| AWG-kcmil      | Types RHW, THHW, TW, UF      |      | Types RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, USE-2 | Types RHW, THHW, TW, UF          |      | Types RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW-2, THWN-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, USE-2 | AWG-kcmil      |
|                | Copper                       |      |   | Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum |      |   |                |
| 14a            | 15                           | 20   | 25  | —                                | —    | —   | —              |
| 12a            | 20                           | 25   | 30  | 15                               | 20   | 25  | 12a            |
| 10a            | 30                           | 35   | 40  | 25                               | 30   | 35  | 10a            |
| 8              | 40                           | 50   | 55  | 35                               | 40   | 45  | 8              |

|     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 6   | 55  | 65  | 75  | 40  | 50  | 55  | 6   |
| 4   | 70  | 85  | 95  | 55  | 65  | 75  | 4   |
| 3   | 85  | 100 | 115 | 65  | 75  | 85  | 3   |
| 2   | 95  | 115 | 130 | 75  | 90  | 100 | 2   |
| 1   | 110 | 130 | 145 | 85  | 100 | 115 | 1   |
| 1/0 | 125 | 150 | 170 | 100 | 120 | 135 | 1/0 |
| 2/0 | 145 | 175 | 195 | 115 | 135 | 150 | 2/0 |
| 3/0 | 165 | 200 | 225 | 130 | 155 | 175 | 3/0 |
| 4/0 | 195 | 230 | 260 | 150 | 180 | 205 | 4/0 |
| 250 | 215 | 255 | 290 | 170 | 205 | 230 | 250 |
| 300 | 240 | 285 | 320 | 195 | 230 | 260 | 300 |
| 350 | 260 | 310 | 350 | 210 | 250 | 280 | 350 |
| 400 | 280 | 335 | 380 | 225 | 270 | 305 | 400 |
| 500 | 320 | 380 | 430 | 260 | 310 | 350 | 500 |
| 600 | 350 | 420 | 475 | 285 | 340 | 385 | 600 |
| 700 | 385 | 460 | 520 | 315 | 375 | 425 | 700 |
| 750 | 400 | 475 | 535 | 320 | 385 | 435 | 750 |
| 800 | 410 | 490 | 555 | 330 | 395 | 445 | 800 |
| 900 | 435 | 520 | 585 | 355 | 425 | 480 | 900 |

For SI: °C = [(°F) - 32]/1.8.

a. See Table E3705.5.3 for conductor overcurrent protection limitations.



|       |   |      |      |         |
|-------|---|------|------|---------|
| 66-70 | — | 0.33 | 0.58 | 150-158 |
| 71-75 | — | —    | 0.50 | 159-167 |
| 76-80 | — | —    | 0.41 | 168-176 |
| 81-85 | — | —    | 0.29 | 177-185 |

For SI:  $1\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C} = [(\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}) - 32]/1.8$ .

**E3705.3 Adjustment factor for conductor proximity.**

~~Where the number of current-carrying conductors in a raceway or cable exceeds three, or where single conductors or multiconductor cables are stacked or bundled for distances greater than 24 inches (610 mm) without maintaining spacing and are not installed in raceways, the allowable ampacity of each conductor shall be reduced as shown in Table E3705.3. [310.15(B)(3)]~~

**Exceptions:**

~~1. Adjustment factors shall not apply to conductors in nipples having a length not exceeding 24 inches (610 mm). [310.15(B)(3)(2)]~~

~~2. Adjustment factors shall not apply to underground conductors entering or leaving an outdoor trench if those conductors have physical protection in the form of rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, or rigid nonmetallic conduit having a length not exceeding 10 feet (3048 mm) and the number of conductors does not exceed four. [310.15(B)(3)(3)]~~

~~3. Adjustment factors shall not apply to type AC cable or to type MC cable without an overall outer jacket meeting all of the following conditions:~~

~~3.1. Each cable has not more than three current-carrying conductors.~~

~~3.2. The conductors are 12 AWG copper.~~

~~3.3. Not more than 20 current-carrying conductors are bundled, stacked or supported on bridle rings. [310.15(B)(3)(4)]~~

~~4. An adjustment factor of 60 percent shall be applied to Type AC cable and Type MC cable where all of the following conditions apply:~~

~~4.1. The cables do not have an overall outer jacket.~~

~~4.2. The number of current-carrying conductors exceeds 20.~~

~~4.3. The cables are stacked or bundled longer than 24 inches (607 mm) without spacing being maintained. [310.15(B)(3)(5)]~~

TABLE E3705.3 [Table 310.15(B)(3)(a)]

## CONDUCTOR PROXIMITY ADJUSTMENT FACTORS

| NUMBER OF CURRENT CARRYING CONDUCTORS IN CABLE OR RACEWAY | PERCENT OF VALUES IN TABLE E3705.1 |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 4-6   | 80                                 |
| 7-9   | 70                                 |
| 10-20   | 50                                 |
| 21-30   | 45                                 |
| 31-40   | 40                                 |
| 41 and above  | 35                                 |

## E3705.4 Temperature limitations.

The temperature rating associated with the ampacity of a conductor shall be so selected and coordinated to not exceed the lowest temperature rating of any connected termination, conductor or device. Conductors with temperature ratings higher than specified for terminations shall be permitted to be used for ampacity adjustment, correction, or both. Except where the equipment is marked otherwise, conductor ampacities used in determining equipment termination provisions shall be based on Table E3705.1. [110.14(C)]

## E3705.4.1 Conductors rated 60°C.

Except where the equipment is marked otherwise, termination provisions of equipment for circuits rated 100 amperes or less, or marked for 14 AWG through 1 AWG conductors, shall be used only for one of the following:

1. Conductors rated 60°C (140°F);
2. Conductors with higher temperature ratings, provided that the ampacity of such conductors is determined based on the 60°C (140°F) ampacity of the conductor size used;
3. Conductors with higher temperature ratings where the equipment is listed and identified for use with such conductors; or

~~4. For motors marked with design letters B, C, or D conductors having an insulation rating of 75°C (167°F) or higher shall be permitted to be used provided that the ampacity of such conductors does not exceed the 75°C (167°F) ampacity. [110.14(C)(1)(a)]~~

~~E3705.4.2 Conductors rated 75°C.~~

~~Termination provisions of equipment for circuits rated over 100 amperes, or marked for conductors larger than 1 AWG, shall be used only for:~~

~~1. Conductors rated 75°C (167°F).~~

~~2. Conductors with higher temperature ratings provided that the ampacity of such conductors does not exceed the 75°C (167°F) ampacity of the conductor size used, or provided that the equipment is listed and identified for use with such conductors. [110.14(C)(1)(b)]~~

~~E3705.4.3 Separately installed pressure connectors.~~

~~Separately installed pressure connectors shall be used with conductors at the ampacities not exceeding the ampacity at the listed and identified temperature rating of the connector. [110.14(C)(2)]~~

~~E3705.4.4 Conductors of Type NM cable.~~

~~Conductors in NM cable assemblies shall be rated at 90°C (194°F). Types NM, NMC, and NMS cable identified by the markings NM-B, NMC-B, and NMS-B meet this requirement. The allowable ampacity of Types NM, NMC, and NMS cable shall not exceed that of 60°C (140°F) rated conductors and shall comply with Section E3705.1 and Table E3705.5.3. The 90°C (194°F) rating shall be permitted to be used for ampacity adjustment and calculations provided that the final corrected or adjusted ampacity does not exceed that for a 60°C (140°F) rated conductor. Where more than two NM cables containing two or more current carrying conductors are installed, without maintaining spacing between the cables, through the same opening in wood framing that is to be sealed with thermal insulation, caulk or sealing foam, the allowable ampacity of each conductor shall be adjusted in accordance with Table E3705.3. Where more than two NM cables containing two or more current carrying conductors are installed in contact with thermal insulation without maintaining spacing between cables, the allowable ampacity of each conductor shall be adjusted in accordance with Table E3705.3. (334.80 and 334.112)~~

~~E3705.4.5 Conductors of Type SE cable.~~

~~Where used as a branch circuit or feeder wiring method within the interior of a building and installed in thermal insulation, the ampacity of the conductors in Type SE cable assemblies shall be in accordance with the 60°C (140°F) conductor temperature rating. The maximum conductor temperature rating shall be permitted to be used for ampacity adjustment and correction purposes, provided that the final derated ampacity does not exceed that for a 60°C (140°F) rated conductor. [338.10(B)(4)(a)]~~

~~E3705.5 Overcurrent protection required.~~

All ungrounded branch circuit and feeder conductors shall be protected against overcurrent by an overcurrent device installed at the point where the conductors receive their supply. Overcurrent devices shall not be connected in series with a grounded conductor. Overcurrent protection and allowable loads for branch circuits and for feeders that do not serve as the main power feeder to the dwelling unit load shall be in accordance with this chapter.

Branch circuit conductors and equipment shall be protected by overcurrent protective devices having a rating or setting not exceeding the allowable ampacity specified in Table E3705.1 and Sections E3705.2, E3705.3 and E3705.4 except where otherwise permitted or required in Sections E3705.5.1 through E3705.5.3. [240.4, 240.21, and 310.15(B)(7)(2)]

#### E3705.5.1 Cords.

Cords shall be protected in accordance with Section E3909.2. [240.5(B)]

#### E3705.5.2 Overcurrent devices of the next higher rating.

The next higher standard overcurrent device rating, above the ampacity of the conductors being protected, shall be permitted to be used, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

1. The conductors being protected are not part of a branch circuit supplying more than one receptacle for cord and plug connected portable loads.
2. The ampacity of conductors does not correspond with the standard ampere rating of a fuse or a circuit breaker without overload trip adjustments above its rating (but that shall be permitted to have other trip or rating adjustments).
3. The next higher standard device rating does not exceed 400 amperes. [240.4(B)]

#### E3705.5.3 Small conductors.

Except as specifically permitted by Section E3705.5.4, the rating of overcurrent protection devices shall not exceed the ratings shown in Table E3705.5.3 for the conductors specified therein. [240.4(D)]

TABLE E3705.5.3 [240.4(D)]

#### OVERCURRENT PROTECTION RATING

##### COPPER

| Size (AWG) | Maximum overcurrent protection device ratings (amps) |
|------------|--|
| 14         | 15   |

##### ALUMINUM OR COPPER-CLAD ALUMINUM

| Size (AWG) | Maximum overcurrent protection device ratings (amps) |
|------------|--|
| 12         | 15   |

|               |               |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <del>12</del> | <del>20</del> | <del>10</del> | <del>25</del> |
| <del>10</del> | <del>30</del> | <del>8</del>  | <del>30</del> |

~~a. The maximum overcurrent protection device rating shall not exceed the conductor allowable ampacity determined by the application of the correction and adjustment factors in accordance with Sections E3705.2 and E3705.3.~~

~~E3705.5.4 Air conditioning and heat pump equipment.~~

~~Air conditioning and heat pump equipment circuit conductors shall be permitted to be protected against overcurrent in accordance with Section E3702.11. [240.4(G)]~~

~~E3705.6 Fuses and fixed trip circuit breakers.~~

~~The standard ampere ratings for fuses and inverse time circuit breakers shall be considered 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 110, 125, 150, 175, 200, 225, 250, 300, 350 and 400 amperes. [240.6]~~

~~E3705.7 Location of overcurrent devices in or on premises.~~

~~Overcurrent devices shall:~~

- ~~1. Be readily accessible. [240.24(A)]~~
- ~~2. Not be located where they will be exposed to physical damage. [240.24(C)]~~
- ~~3. Not be located where they will be in the vicinity of easily ignitable material such as in clothes closets. [240.24(D)]~~
- ~~4. Not be located in bathrooms. [240.24(E)]~~
- ~~5. Not be located over steps of a stairway.~~
- ~~6. Be installed so that the center of the grip of the operating handle of the switch or circuit breaker, when in its highest position, is not more than 6 feet 7 inches (2007 mm) above the floor or working platform. [240.24(A)]~~

~~Exceptions:~~

- ~~1. This section shall not apply to supplementary overcurrent protection that is integral to utilization equipment. [240.24(A)(2)]~~
- ~~2. Overcurrent devices installed adjacent to the utilization equipment that they supply shall be permitted to be accessible by portable means. [240.24(A)(4)]~~

~~E3705.8 Ready access for occupants.~~

~~Each occupant shall have ready access to all overcurrent devices protecting the conductors supplying that occupancy. [240.24(B)]~~

~~E3705.9 Enclosures for overcurrent devices.~~

~~Overcurrent devices shall be enclosed in cabinets, cutout boxes, or equipment assemblies. The operating handle of a circuit breaker shall be permitted to be accessible without opening a door or cover. [240.30(A) and (B)]~~

## ~~SECTION E3706 PANELBOARDS~~

~~E3706.1 Panelboard rating.~~

~~All panelboards shall have a rating not less than that of the minimum service or feeder capacity required for the calculated load. (408.30)~~

~~E3706.2 Panelboard circuit identification.~~

~~All circuits and circuit modifications shall be legibly identified as to their clear, evident, and specific purpose or use. The identification shall include an approved degree of detail that allows each circuit to be distinguished from all others. Spare positions that contain unused overcurrent devices or switches shall be described accordingly. The identification shall be included in a circuit directory located on the face of the panelboard enclosure or inside the panel door. Circuits shall not be described in a manner that depends on transient conditions of occupancy. [408.4(A)]~~

~~E3706.3 Panelboard overcurrent protection.~~

~~In addition to the requirement of Section E3706.1, a panelboard shall be protected by an overcurrent protective device having a rating not greater than that of the panelboard. Such overcurrent protective device shall be located within or at any point on the supply side of the panelboard. (408.36)~~

~~E3706.4 Grounded conductor terminations.~~

~~Each grounded conductor shall terminate within the panelboard on an individual terminal that is not also used for another conductor, except that grounded conductors of circuits with parallel conductors shall be permitted to terminate on a single terminal where the terminal is identified for connection of more than one conductor. (408.41 and 408.41 Exception)~~

~~E3706.5 Back fed devices.~~

~~Plug-in type overcurrent protection devices or plug-in type main lug assemblies that are back fed and used to terminate field-installed ungrounded supply conductors shall be secured in place by an additional fastener that requires other than a pull to release the device from the mounting means on the panel. [408.36(D)].~~

**CHAPTER 38  
WIRING METHODS**

RESERVED

~~SECTION E3801~~

~~GENERAL REQUIREMENTS~~

~~E3801.1 Scope.~~

~~This chapter covers the wiring methods for services, feeders and branch circuits for electrical power and distribution. (300.1)~~

~~E3801.2 Allowable wiring methods.~~

~~The allowable wiring methods for electrical installations shall be those listed in Table E3801.2. Single conductors shall be used only where part of one of the recognized wiring methods listed in Table E3801.2. As used in this code, abbreviations of the wiring method types shall be as indicated in Table E3801.2. [110.8, 300.3(A)]~~

~~TABLE E3801.2~~

~~ALLOWABLE WIRING METHODS~~

| <del>ALLOWABLE WIRING METHOD</del>                     | <del>DESIGNATED ABBREVIATION</del> |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <del>Armored cable</del>                               | <del>AC</del>                      |
| <del>Electrical metallic tubing</del>                  | <del>EMT</del>                     |
| <del>Electrical nonmetallic tubing</del>               | <del>ENT</del>                     |
| <del>Flexible metal conduit</del>                      | <del>FMC</del>                     |
| <del>Intermediate metal conduit</del>                  | <del>IMC</del>                     |
| <del>Liquidtight flexible conduit</del>                | <del>LFC</del>                     |
| <del>Metal clad cable</del>                            | <del>MC</del>                      |
| <del>Nonmetallic sheathed cable</del>                  | <del>NM</del>                      |
| <del>Rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit (Type PVC)</del> | <del>RNC</del>                     |



|  |   |    |   |    |    |    |    |   |   |   |   |   |
|--|---|----|---|----|----|----|----|---|---|---|---|---|
| In noncinder concrete in contact with grade                        | — | Af | A | —  | Af | Aj | —  | — | — | — | — | — |
| Embedded in plaster not exposed to dampness                        | A | A  | A | A  | A  | A  | A  | — | — | A | A | — |
| Embedded in masonry  | — | A  | A | —  | Af | A  | A  | — | — | — | — | — |
| In masonry voids and cells exposed to dampness or below grade line | — | Af | A | Ad | Af | A  | A  | — | — | A | A | — |
| Fished in masonry voids  | A | —  | — | A  | —  | A  | A  | A | — | A | A | — |
| In masonry voids and cells not exposed to dampness                 | A | A  | A | A  | A  | A  | A  | A | — | A | A | — |
| Run exposed  | A | A  | A | A  | A  | A  | A  | A | A | A | A | — |
| Run exposed and subject to physical damage                         | — | —  | — | —  | Ag | —  | —  | — | — | — | — | — |
| For direct burial  | — | Af | — | —  | Af | A  | Af | — | — | — | A | A |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

- a. Liquid tight flexible nonmetallic conduit without integral reinforcement within the conduit wall shall not exceed 6 feet in length.
- b. Type USE cable shall not be used inside buildings.
- c. The grounded conductor shall be insulated.
- d. Conductors shall be a type approved for wet locations and the installation shall prevent water from entering other raceways.
- e. Shall be listed as "Sunlight Resistant."
- f. Metal raceways shall be protected from corrosion and approved for the application. Aluminum RMC requires approved supplementary corrosion protection.
- g. RNC shall be Schedule 80.
- h. Shall be listed as "Sunlight Resistant" where exposed to the direct rays of the sun.

i. Conduit shall not exceed 6 feet in length.

j. Liquid tight flexible nonmetallic conduit is permitted to be encased in concrete where listed for direct burial and only straight connectors listed for use with LFNC are used.

k. In wet locations under any of the following conditions:

1. The metallic covering is impervious to moisture.

2. A lead sheath or moisture impervious jacket is provided under the metal covering.

3. The insulated conductors under the metallic covering are listed for use in wet locations and a corrosion resistant jacket is provided over the metallic sheath.

**SECTION E3802**

**ABOVE-GROUND INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

**E3802.1 Installation and support requirements.**

Wiring methods shall be installed and supported in accordance with Table E3802.1. (Chapter 3 and 300.11)

TABLE E3802.1 (Chapter 3)

**GENERAL INSTALLATION AND SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS FOR WIRING METHODS<sup>a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k</sup>**

| INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS (Requirement applicable only to wiring methods marked "A") | AG | EMT | ENT | FMC | NM | RNC | SE | SR <sup>a</sup> | USE |
|--|----|-----|-----|-----|----|-----|----|-----------------|-----|
|  | MC | IMC |     | LMC | UF |     |    |                 |     |

Where run parallel with the framing member or furring strip, the wiring shall be not less than 1 1/4 inches from the edge of a furring strip or a framing member such as a joist, rafter or stud or shall be physically protected.

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | — | A | A | A | — | A | — | — |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

Bored holes in framing members for wiring shall be located not less than 1 1/4 inches from the edge of the framing member or shall be protected with a minimum 0.0625-inch steel plate or sleeve, a listed steel plate or other physical protection.

|    |   |    |    |    |   |    |   |   |
|----|---|----|----|----|---|----|---|---|
| Ak | — | Ak | Ak | Ak | — | Ak | — | — |
|----|---|----|----|----|---|----|---|---|

Where installed in grooves, to be covered by wallboard, siding, paneling, carpeting, or similar finish, wiring methods shall be protected by

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A | — | A | A | A | — | A | A | A |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

0.0625 inch thick steel plate, sleeve, or equivalent, a listed steel plate or by not less than 11/4 inch free space for the full length of the groove in which the cable or raceway is installed.

Securely fastened bushings or grommets shall be provided to protect wiring run through openings in metal framing members. — — Aj — Aj — Aj — —

The maximum number of 90 degree bends shall not exceed four between junction boxes. — A A A — A — — —

Bushings shall be provided where entering a box, fitting or enclosure unless the box or fitting is designed to afford equivalent protection. A A A A — A — A —

Ends of raceways shall be reamed to remove rough edges. — A A A — A — A —

Maximum allowable on center support spacing for the wiring method in feet. 4.5b, 4.5c, 4.5d, 4.5e, 4.5f, 4.5g, 4.5h, 4.5i, 4.5j, 4.5k, 4.5l, 4.5m, 4.5n, 4.5o, 4.5p, 4.5q, 4.5r, 4.5s, 4.5t, 4.5u, 4.5v, 4.5w, 4.5x, 4.5y, 4.5z, 4.5aa, 4.5ab, 4.5ac, 4.5ad, 4.5ae, 4.5af, 4.5ag, 4.5ah, 4.5ai, 4.5aj, 4.5ak, 4.5al, 4.5am, 4.5an, 4.5ao, 4.5ap, 4.5aq, 4.5ar, 4.5as, 4.5at, 4.5au, 4.5av, 4.5aw, 4.5ax, 4.5ay, 4.5az, 4.5ba, 4.5bb, 4.5bc, 4.5bd, 4.5be, 4.5bf, 4.5bg, 4.5bh, 4.5bi, 4.5bj, 4.5bk, 4.5bl, 4.5bm, 4.5bn, 4.5bo, 4.5bp, 4.5bq, 4.5br, 4.5bs, 4.5bt, 4.5bu, 4.5bv, 4.5bw, 4.5bx, 4.5by, 4.5bz, 4.5ca, 4.5cb, 4.5cc, 4.5cd, 4.5ce, 4.5cf, 4.5cg, 4.5ch, 4.5ci, 4.5cj, 4.5ck, 4.5cl, 4.5cm, 4.5cn, 4.5co, 4.5cp, 4.5cq, 4.5cr, 4.5cs, 4.5ct, 4.5cu, 4.5cv, 4.5cw, 4.5cx, 4.5cy, 4.5cz, 4.5da, 4.5db, 4.5dc, 4.5dd, 4.5de, 4.5df, 4.5dg, 4.5dh, 4.5di, 4.5dj, 4.5dk, 4.5dl, 4.5dm, 4.5dn, 4.5do, 4.5dp, 4.5dq, 4.5dr, 4.5ds, 4.5dt, 4.5du, 4.5dv, 4.5dw, 4.5dx, 4.5dy, 4.5dz, 4.5ea, 4.5eb, 4.5ec, 4.5ed, 4.5ee, 4.5ef, 4.5eg, 4.5eh, 4.5ei, 4.5ej, 4.5ek, 4.5el, 4.5em, 4.5en, 4.5eo, 4.5ep, 4.5eq, 4.5er, 4.5es, 4.5et, 4.5eu, 4.5ev, 4.5ew, 4.5ex, 4.5ey, 4.5ez, 4.5fa, 4.5fb, 4.5fc, 4.5fd, 4.5fe, 4.5ff, 4.5fg, 4.5fh, 4.5fi, 4.5fj, 4.5fk, 4.5fl, 4.5fm, 4.5fn, 4.5fo, 4.5fp, 4.5fq, 4.5fr, 4.5fs, 4.5ft, 4.5fu, 4.5fv, 4.5fw, 4.5fx, 4.5fy, 4.5fz, 4.5ga, 4.5gb, 4.5gc, 4.5gd, 4.5ge, 4.5gf, 4.5gg, 4.5gh, 4.5gi, 4.5gj, 4.5gk, 4.5gl, 4.5gm, 4.5gn, 4.5go, 4.5gp, 4.5gq, 4.5gr, 4.5gs, 4.5gt, 4.5gu, 4.5gv, 4.5gw, 4.5gx, 4.5gy, 4.5gz, 4.5ha, 4.5hb, 4.5hc, 4.5hd, 4.5he, 4.5hf, 4.5hg, 4.5hi, 4.5hj, 4.5hk, 4.5hl, 4.5hm, 4.5hn, 4.5ho, 4.5hp, 4.5hq, 4.5hr, 4.5hs, 4.5ht, 4.5hu, 4.5hv, 4.5hw, 4.5hx, 4.5hy, 4.5hz, 4.5ia, 4.5ib, 4.5ic, 4.5id, 4.5ie, 4.5if, 4.5ig, 4.5ih, 4.5ii, 4.5ij, 4.5ik, 4.5il, 4.5im, 4.5in, 4.5io, 4.5ip, 4.5iq, 4.5ir, 4.5is, 4.5it, 4.5iu, 4.5iv, 4.5iw, 4.5ix, 4.5iy, 4.5iz, 4.5ja, 4.5jb, 4.5jc, 4.5jd, 4.5je, 4.5jf, 4.5jg, 4.5jh, 4.5ji, 4.5jj, 4.5jk, 4.5jl, 4.5jm, 4.5jn, 4.5jo, 4.5jp, 4.5jq, 4.5jr, 4.5js, 4.5jt, 4.5ju, 4.5jv, 4.5jw, 4.5jx, 4.5jy, 4.5jz, 4.5ka, 4.5kb, 4.5kc, 4.5kd, 4.5ke, 4.5kf, 4.5kg, 4.5kh, 4.5ki, 4.5kj, 4.5kk, 4.5kl, 4.5km, 4.5kn, 4.5ko, 4.5kp, 4.5kq, 4.5kr, 4.5ks, 4.5kt, 4.5ku, 4.5kv, 4.5kw, 4.5kx, 4.5ky, 4.5kz, 4.5la, 4.5lb, 4.5lc, 4.5ld, 4.5le, 4.5lf, 4.5lg, 4.5lh, 4.5li, 4.5lj, 4.5lk, 4.5ll, 4.5lm, 4.5ln, 4.5lo, 4.5lp, 4.5lq, 4.5lr, 4.5ls, 4.5lt, 4.5lu, 4.5lv, 4.5lw, 4.5lx, 4.5ly, 4.5lz, 4.5ma, 4.5mb, 4.5mc, 4.5md, 4.5me, 4.5mf, 4.5mg, 4.5mh, 4.5mi, 4.5mj, 4.5mk, 4.5ml, 4.5mm, 4.5mn, 4.5mo, 4.5mp, 4.5mq, 4.5mr, 4.5ms, 4.5mt, 4.5mu, 4.5mv, 4.5mw, 4.5mx, 4.5my, 4.5mz, 4.5na, 4.5nb, 4.5nc, 4.5nd, 4.5ne, 4.5nf, 4.5ng, 4.5nh, 4.5ni, 4.5nj, 4.5nk, 4.5nl, 4.5nm, 4.5nn, 4.5no, 4.5np, 4.5nq, 4.5nr, 4.5ns, 4.5nt, 4.5nu, 4.5nv, 4.5nw, 4.5nx, 4.5ny, 4.5nz, 4.5oa, 4.5ob, 4.5oc, 4.5od, 4.5oe, 4.5of, 4.5og, 4.5oh, 4.5oi, 4.5oj, 4.5ok, 4.5ol, 4.5om, 4.5on, 4.5oo, 4.5op, 4.5oq, 4.5or, 4.5os, 4.5ot, 4.5ou, 4.5ov, 4.5ow, 4.5ox, 4.5oy, 4.5oz, 4.5pa, 4.5pb, 4.5pc, 4.5pd, 4.5pe, 4.5pf, 4.5pg, 4.5ph, 4.5pi, 4.5pj, 4.5pk, 4.5pl, 4.5pm, 4.5pn, 4.5po, 4.5pp, 4.5pq, 4.5pr, 4.5ps, 4.5pt, 4.5pu, 4.5pv, 4.5pw, 4.5px, 4.5py, 4.5pz, 4.5qa, 4.5qb, 4.5qc, 4.5qd, 4.5qe, 4.5qf, 4.5qg, 4.5qh, 4.5qi, 4.5qj, 4.5qk, 4.5ql, 4.5qm, 4.5qn, 4.5qo, 4.5qp, 4.5qq, 4.5qr, 4.5qs, 4.5qt, 4.5qu, 4.5qv, 4.5qw, 4.5qx, 4.5qy, 4.5qz, 4.5ra, 4.5rb, 4.5rc, 4.5rd, 4.5re, 4.5rf, 4.5rg, 4.5rh, 4.5ri, 4.5rj, 4.5rk, 4.5rl, 4.5rm, 4.5rn, 4.5ro, 4.5rp, 4.5rq, 4.5rr, 4.5rs, 4.5rt, 4.5ru, 4.5rv, 4.5rw, 4.5rx, 4.5ry, 4.5rz, 4.5sa, 4.5sb, 4.5sc, 4.5sd, 4.5se, 4.5sf, 4.5sg, 4.5sh, 4.5si, 4.5sj, 4.5sk, 4.5sl, 4.5sm, 4.5sn, 4.5so, 4.5sp, 4.5sq, 4.5sr, 4.5ss, 4.5st, 4.5su, 4.5sv, 4.5sw, 4.5sx, 4.5sy, 4.5sz, 4.5ta, 4.5tb, 4.5tc, 4.5td, 4.5te, 4.5tf, 4.5tg, 4.5th, 4.5ti, 4.5tj, 4.5tk, 4.5tl, 4.5tm, 4.5tn, 4.5to, 4.5tp, 4.5tq, 4.5tr, 4.5ts, 4.5tt, 4.5tu, 4.5tv, 4.5tw, 4.5tx, 4.5ty, 4.5tz, 4.5ua, 4.5ub, 4.5uc, 4.5ud, 4.5ue, 4.5uf, 4.5ug, 4.5uh, 4.5ui, 4.5uj, 4.5uk, 4.5ul, 4.5um, 4.5un, 4.5uo, 4.5up, 4.5uq, 4.5ur, 4.5us, 4.5ut, 4.5uu, 4.5uv, 4.5uw, 4.5ux, 4.5uy, 4.5uz, 4.5va, 4.5vb, 4.5vc, 4.5vd, 4.5ve, 4.5vf, 4.5vg, 4.5vh, 4.5vi, 4.5vj, 4.5vk, 4.5vl, 4.5vm, 4.5vn, 4.5vo, 4.5vp, 4.5vq, 4.5vr, 4.5vs, 4.5vt, 4.5vu, 4.5vv, 4.5vw, 4.5vx, 4.5vy, 4.5vz, 4.5wa, 4.5wb, 4.5wc, 4.5wd, 4.5we, 4.5wf, 4.5wg, 4.5wh, 4.5wi, 4.5wj, 4.5wk, 4.5wl, 4.5wm, 4.5wn, 4.5wo, 4.5wp, 4.5wq, 4.5wr, 4.5ws, 4.5wt, 4.5wu, 4.5wv, 4.5ww, 4.5wx, 4.5wy, 4.5wz, 4.5xa, 4.5xb, 4.5xc, 4.5xd, 4.5xe, 4.5xf, 4.5xg, 4.5xh, 4.5xi, 4.5xj, 4.5xk, 4.5xl, 4.5xm, 4.5xn, 4.5xo, 4.5xp, 4.5xq, 4.5xr, 4.5xs, 4.5xt, 4.5xu, 4.5xv, 4.5xw, 4.5xx, 4.5xy, 4.5xz, 4.5ya, 4.5yb, 4.5yc, 4.5yd, 4.5ye, 4.5yf, 4.5yg, 4.5yh, 4.5yi, 4.5yj, 4.5yk, 4.5yl, 4.5ym, 4.5yn, 4.5yo, 4.5yp, 4.5yq, 4.5yr, 4.5ys, 4.5yt, 4.5yu, 4.5yv, 4.5yw, 4.5yx, 4.5yy, 4.5yz, 4.5za, 4.5zb, 4.5zc, 4.5zd, 4.5ze, 4.5zf, 4.5zg, 4.5zh, 4.5zi, 4.5zj, 4.5zk, 4.5zl, 4.5zm, 4.5zn, 4.5zo, 4.5zp, 4.5zq, 4.5zr, 4.5zs, 4.5zt, 4.5zu, 4.5zv, 4.5zw, 4.5zx, 4.5zy, 4.5zz, 2.5

Maximum support distance in inches from box or other terminations. 12b, 12c, 12d, 12e, 12f, 12g, 12h, 12i, 12j, 12k, 12l, 12m, 12n, 12o, 12p, 12q, 12r, 12s, 12t, 12u, 12v, 12w, 12x, 12y, 12z, 12aa, 12ab, 12ac, 12ad, 12ae, 12af, 12ag, 12ah, 12ai, 12aj, 12ak, 12al, 12am, 12an, 12ao, 12ap, 12aq, 12ar, 12as, 12at, 12au, 12av, 12aw, 12ax, 12ay, 12az, 12ba, 12bb, 12bc, 12bd, 12be, 12bf, 12bg, 12bh, 12bi, 12bj, 12bk, 12bl, 12bm, 12bn, 12bo, 12bp, 12bq, 12br, 12bs, 12bt, 12bu, 12bv, 12bw, 12bx, 12by, 12bz, 12ca, 12cb, 12cc, 12cd, 12ce, 12cf, 12cg, 12ch, 12ci, 12cj, 12ck, 12cl, 12cm, 12cn, 12co, 12cp, 12cq, 12cr, 12cs, 12ct, 12cu, 12cv, 12cw, 12cx, 12cy, 12cz, 12da, 12db, 12dc, 12dd, 12de, 12df, 12dg, 12dh, 12di, 12dj, 12dk, 12dl, 12dm, 12dn, 12do, 12dp, 12dq, 12dr, 12ds, 12dt, 12du, 12dv, 12dw, 12dx, 12dy, 12dz, 12ea, 12eb, 12ec, 12ed, 12ee, 12ef, 12eg, 12eh, 12ei, 12ej, 12ek, 12el, 12em, 12en, 12eo, 12ep, 12eq, 12er, 12es, 12et, 12eu, 12ev, 12ew, 12ex, 12ey, 12ez, 12fa, 12fb, 12fc, 12fd, 12fe, 12ff, 12fg, 12fh, 12fi, 12fj, 12fk, 12fl, 12fm, 12fn, 12fo, 12fp, 12fq, 12fr, 12fs, 12ft, 12fu, 12fv, 12fw, 12fx, 12fy, 12fz, 12ga, 12gb, 12gc, 12gd, 12ge, 12gf, 12gg, 12gh, 12gi, 12gj, 12gk, 12gl, 12gm, 12gn, 12go, 12gp, 12gq, 12gr, 12gs, 12gt, 12gu, 12gv, 12gw, 12gx, 12gy, 12gz, 12ha, 12hb, 12hc, 12hd, 12he, 12hf, 12hg, 12hi, 12hj, 12hk, 12hl, 12hm, 12hn, 12ho, 12hp, 12hq, 12hr, 12hs, 12ht, 12hu, 12hv, 12hw, 12hx, 12hy, 12hz, 12ia, 12ib, 12ic, 12id, 12ie, 12if, 12ig, 12ih, 12ii, 12ij, 12ik, 12il, 12im, 12in, 12io, 12ip, 12iq, 12ir, 12is, 12it, 12iu, 12iv, 12iw, 12ix, 12iy, 12iz, 12ja, 12jb, 12jc, 12jd, 12je, 12jf, 12jg, 12jh, 12ji, 12jj, 12jk, 12jl, 12jm, 12jn, 12jo, 12jp, 12jq, 12jr, 12js, 12jt, 12ju, 12jv, 12jw, 12jx, 12jy, 12jz, 12ka, 12kb, 12kc, 12kd, 12ke, 12kf, 12kg, 12kh, 12ki, 12kj, 12kk, 12kl, 12km, 12kn, 12ko, 12kp, 12kq, 12kr, 12ks, 12kt, 12ku, 12kv, 12kw, 12kx, 12ky, 12kz, 12la, 12lb, 12lc, 12ld, 12le, 12lf, 12lg, 12lh, 12li, 12lj, 12lk, 12ll, 12lm, 12ln, 12lo, 12lp, 12lq, 12lr, 12ls, 12lt, 12lu, 12lv, 12lw, 12lx, 12ly, 12lz, 12ma, 12mb, 12mc, 12md, 12me, 12mf, 12mg, 12mh, 12mi, 12mj, 12mk, 12ml, 12mm, 12mn, 12mo, 12mp, 12mq, 12mr, 12ms, 12mt, 12mu, 12mv, 12mw, 12mx, 12my, 12mz, 12na, 12nb, 12nc, 12nd, 12ne, 12nf, 12ng, 12nh, 12ni, 12nj, 12nk, 12nl, 12nm, 12nn, 12no, 12np, 12nq, 12nr, 12ns, 12nt, 12nu, 12nv, 12nw, 12nx, 12ny, 12nz, 12oa, 12ob, 12oc, 12od, 12oe, 12of, 12og, 12oh, 12oi, 12oj, 12ok, 12ol, 12om, 12on, 12oo, 12op, 12oq, 12or, 12os, 12ot, 12ou, 12ov, 12ow, 12ox, 12oy, 12oz, 12pa, 12pb, 12pc, 12pd, 12pe, 12pf, 12pg, 12ph, 12pi, 12pj, 12pk, 12pl, 12pm, 12pn, 12po, 12pp, 12pq, 12pr, 12ps, 12pt, 12pu, 12pv, 12pw, 12px, 12py, 12pz, 12qa, 12qb, 12qc, 12qd, 12qe, 12qf, 12qg, 12qh, 12qi, 12qj, 12qk, 12ql, 12qm, 12qn, 12qo, 12qp, 12qq, 12qr, 12qs, 12qt, 12qu, 12qv, 12qw, 12qx, 12qy, 12qz, 12ra, 12rb, 12rc, 12rd, 12re, 12rf, 12rg, 12rh, 12ri, 12rj, 12rk, 12rl, 12rm, 12rn, 12ro, 12rp, 12rq, 12rr, 12rs, 12rt, 12ru, 12rv, 12rw, 12rx, 12ry, 12rz, 12sa, 12sb, 12sc, 12sd, 12se, 12sf, 12sg, 12sh, 12si, 12sj, 12sk, 12sl, 12sm, 12sn, 12so, 12sp, 12sq, 12sr, 12ss, 12st, 12su, 12sv, 12sw, 12sx, 12sy, 12sz, 12ta, 12tb, 12tc, 12td, 12te, 12tf, 12tg, 12th, 12ti, 12tj, 12tk, 12tl, 12tm, 12tn, 12to, 12tp, 12tq, 12tr, 12ts, 12tt, 12tu, 12tv, 12tw, 12tx, 12ty, 12tz, 12ua, 12ub, 12uc, 12ud, 12ue, 12uf, 12ug, 12uh, 12ui, 12uj, 12uk, 12ul, 12um, 12un, 12uo, 12up, 12uq, 12ur, 12us, 12ut, 12uu, 12uv, 12uw, 12ux, 12uy, 12uz, 12va, 12vb, 12vc, 12vd, 12ve, 12vf, 12vg, 12vh, 12vi, 12vj, 12vk, 12vl, 12vm, 12vn, 12vo, 12vp, 12vq, 12vr, 12vs, 12vt, 12vu, 12vv, 12vw, 12vx, 12vy, 12vz, 12wa, 12wb, 12wc, 12wd, 12we, 12wf, 12wg, 12wh, 12wi, 12wj, 12wk, 12wl, 12wm, 12wn, 12wo, 12wp, 12wq, 12wr, 12ws, 12wt, 12wu, 12wv, 12ww, 12wx, 12wy, 12wz, 12xa, 12xb, 12xc, 12xd, 12xe, 12xf, 12xg, 12xh, 12xi, 12xj, 12xk, 12xl, 12xm, 12xn, 12xo, 12xp, 12xq, 12xr, 12xs, 12xt, 12xu, 12xv, 12xw, 12xx, 12xy, 12xz, 12ya, 12yb, 12yc, 12yd, 12ye, 12yf, 12yg, 12yh, 12yi, 12yj, 12yk, 12yl, 12ym, 12yn, 12yo, 12yp, 12yq, 12yr, 12ys, 12yt, 12yu, 12yv, 12yw, 12yx, 12yy, 12yz, 12za, 12zb, 12zc, 12zd, 12ze, 12zf, 12zg, 12zh, 12zi, 12zj, 12zk, 12zl, 12zm, 12zn, 12zo, 12zp, 12zq, 12zr, 12zs, 12zt, 12zu, 12zv, 12zw, 12zx, 12zy, 12zz, 36

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 degree = 0.0175 rad.

- a. Installed in accordance with listing requirements.
- b. Supports not required in accessible ceiling spaces between light fixtures where lengths do not exceed 6 feet.
- c. Six feet for MC cable.
- d. Five feet for trade sizes greater than 1 inch.
- e. Two and one half feet where used for service or outdoor feeder and 4.5 feet where used for branch circuit or indoor feeder.
- f. Twenty four inches for Type AC cable and thirty six inches for interlocking Type MC cable where flexibility is necessary.
- g. Where flexibility after installation is necessary, lengths of flexible metal conduit and liquidtight flexible metal conduit measured from the last point where the raceway is securely fastened shall not exceed: 36

inches for trade sizes 1/2 through 1 1/4, 48 inches for trade sizes 1 1/2 through 2 and 5 feet for trade sizes 2 1/2 and larger.

h. Within 8 inches of boxes without cable clamps.

i. Flat cables shall not be stapled on edge.

j. Bushings and grommets shall remain in place and shall be listed for the purpose of cable protection.

k. See Sections R502.8 and R802.7 for additional limitations on the location of bored holes in horizontal framing members.

#### E3802.2 Cables in accessible attics.

Cables in attics or roof spaces provided with access shall be installed as specified in Sections E3802.2.1 and E3802.2.2. (320.3 and 334.23)

##### E3802.2.1 Across structural members.

Where run across the top of floor joists, or run within 7 feet (2134 mm) of floor or floor joists across the face of rafters or studding, in attics and roof spaces that are provided with access, the cable shall be protected by substantial guard strips that are at least as high as the cable. Where such spaces are not provided with access by permanent stairs or ladders, protection shall only be required within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the nearest edge of the attic entrance. [330.23(A) and 334.23]

##### E3802.2.2 Cable installed through or parallel to framing members.

Where cables are installed through or parallel to the sides of rafters, studs or floor joists, guard strips and running boards shall not be required, and the installation shall comply with Table E3802.1. [330.23(B) and 334.23]

#### E3802.3 Exposed cable.

In exposed work, except as provided for in Sections E3802.2 and E3802.4, cable assemblies shall be installed as specified in Sections E3802.3.1 and E3802.3.2. (330.15 and 334.15)

##### E3802.3.1 Surface installation.

Cables shall closely follow the surface of the building finish or running boards. [334.15(A)]

##### E3802.3.2 Protection from physical damage.

Where subject to physical damage, cables shall be protected by rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, Schedule 80 PVC rigid nonmetallic conduit, or other approved means. Where passing through a floor, the cable shall be enclosed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, electrical metallic tubing, Schedule 80 PVC rigid nonmetallic conduit or other approved means extending not less than 6 inches (152 mm) above the floor. [334.15(B)]

~~E3802.3.3~~Locations exposed to direct sunlight.

~~Insulated conductors and cables used where exposed to direct rays of the sun shall be listed or listed and marked, as being "sunlight resistant," or shall be covered with insulating material, such as tape or sleeving, that is listed or listed and marked as being "sunlight resistant." [310.10(D)]~~

~~E3802.4~~In unfinished basements and crawl spaces.

~~Where type NM or SE cable is run at angles with joists in unfinished basements and crawl spaces, cable assemblies containing two or more conductors of sizes 6 AWG and larger and assemblies containing three or more conductors of sizes 8 AWG and larger shall not require additional protection where attached directly to the bottom of the joists. Smaller cables shall be run either through bored holes in joists or on running boards. Type NM or SE cable installed on the wall of an unfinished basement shall be permitted to be installed in a listed conduit or tubing or shall be protected in accordance with Table E3802.1. Conduit or tubing shall be provided with a suitable insulating bushing or adapter at the point where the cable enters the raceway. The sheath of the Type NM or SE cable shall extend through the conduit or tubing and into the outlet or device box not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). The cable shall be secured within 12 inches (305 mm) of the point where the cable enters the conduit or tubing. Metal conduit, tubing, and metal outlet boxes shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor complying with Section E3908.13. [334.15(C)]~~

~~E3802.5~~Bends.

~~Bends shall be made so as not to damage the wiring method or reduce the internal diameter of raceways.~~

~~For types NM and SE cable, bends shall be so made, and other handling shall be such that the cable will not be damaged and the radius of the curve of the inner edge of any bend shall be not less than five times the diameter of the cable. (334.24 and 338.24)~~

~~E3802.6~~Raceways exposed to different temperatures.

~~Where portions of a raceway or sleeve are known to be subjected to different temperatures and where condensation is known to be a problem, as in cold storage areas of buildings or where passing from the interior to the exterior of a building, the raceway or sleeve shall be filled with an approved material to prevent the circulation of warm air to a colder section of the raceway or sleeve. [300.7(A)]~~

~~E3802.7~~Raceways in wet locations above grade.

~~Where raceways are installed in wet locations above grade, the interior of such raceways shall be considered to be a wet location. Insulated conductors and cables installed in raceways in wet locations above grade shall be listed for use in wet locations. (300.9)~~

~~SECTION E3803~~~~UNDERGROUND INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS~~

E3803.1 Minimum cover requirements.

Direct buried cable or raceways shall be installed in accordance with the minimum cover requirements of Table E3803.1. [300.5(A)]

TABLE E3803.1 (Table 300.5)

MINIMUM COVER REQUIREMENTS, BURIAL IN INCHES<sup>a, b, c, d, e</sup>

| LOCATION OF WIRING METHOD OR CIRCUIT   | TYPE OF WIRING METHOD OR CIRCUIT                            |   |  |   |  |
|--|---|---|--|---|--|
|  | 1 Direct burial cables or conductors                        | 2 Rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit | 3 Nonmetallic raceways listed for direct burial without concrete encasement or other approved raceways | 4 Residential branch circuits rated 120 volts or less with GFCI protection and maximum overcurrent protection of 20 amperes | 5 Circuits for control of irrigation and landscape lighting limited to not more than 30 volts and installed with type UF or in other identified cable or raceway |
| All locations not specified below  | 24  | 6   | 18   | 12  | 6  |
| In trench below 2-inch thick concrete or equivalent                            | 18  | 6   | 12   | 6   | 6  |
| Under a building   | 0 (In raceway only or Type MC identified for direct burial) | 0   | 0  | 0 (In raceway only or Type MC identified for direct burial)   | 0 (In raceway only or Type MC identified for direct burial)  |
| Under minimum of 4-inch thick concrete exterior slab with no vehicular traffic | 18  | 4   | 4  | 6 (Direct burial)<br>4 (In raceway)   | 6 (Direct burial)<br>4 (In raceway)  |

and the slab extending not less than 6 inches beyond the underground installation

Under streets, highways, roads, alleys, driveways and parking lots

|    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| 24 | 24 | 24 | 24 | 24 |
|----|----|----|----|----|

One and two-family dwelling driveways and outdoor parking areas, and used only for dwelling-related purposes

|    |    |    |    |    |
|----|----|----|----|----|
| 18 | 18 | 18 | 12 | 18 |
|----|----|----|----|----|

In solid rock where covered by minimum of 2 inches concrete extending down to rock

|                     |   |   |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---|---|---------------------|---------------------|
| 2 (In raceway only) | 2 | 2 | 2 (In raceway only) | 2 (In raceway only) |
|---------------------|---|---|---------------------|---------------------|

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Raceways approved for burial only where encased concrete shall require concrete envelope not less than 2 inches thick.

b. Lesser depths shall be permitted where cables and conductors rise for terminations or splices or where access is otherwise required.

c. Where one of the wiring method types listed in columns 1 to 3 is combined with one of the circuit types in columns 4 and 5, the shallower depth of burial shall be permitted.

d. Where solid rock prevents compliance with the cover depths specified in this table, the wiring shall be installed in metal or nonmetallic raceway permitted for direct burial. The raceways shall be covered by a minimum of 2 inches of concrete extending down to the rock.

e. Cover is defined as the shortest distance in inches (millimeters) measured between a point on the top surface of any direct buried conductor, cable, conduit or other raceway and the top surface of finished grade, concrete, or similar cover.

#### E3803.2 Warning ribbon.

Underground service conductors that are not encased in concrete and that are buried 18 inches (457 mm) or more below grade shall have their location identified by a warning ribbon that is placed in the trench not less than 12 inches (305 mm) above the underground installation. [300.5(D)(3)]

#### E3803.3 Protection from damage.

Direct buried conductors and cables emerging from the ground shall be protected by enclosures or raceways extending from the minimum cover distance below grade required by Section E3803.1 to a point at least 8 feet (2438 mm) above finished grade. In no case shall the protection be required to exceed 18 inches (457 mm) below finished grade. Conductors entering a building shall be protected to the point of entrance. Where the enclosure or raceway is subject to physical damage, the conductors shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, Schedule 80 rigid nonmetallic conduit or the equivalent. [300.5(D)(1)]

#### E3803.4 Splices and taps.

Direct buried conductors or cables shall be permitted to be spliced or tapped without the use of splice boxes. The splices or taps shall be made by approved methods with materials listed for the application. [300.5(E)]

#### E3803.5 Backfill.

Backfill containing large rock, paving materials, cinders, large or sharply angular substances, or corrosive material shall not be placed in an excavation where such materials cause damage to raceways, cables or other substructures or prevent adequate compaction of fill or contribute to corrosion of raceways, cables or other substructures. Where necessary to prevent physical damage to the raceway or cable, protection shall be provided in the form of granular or selected material, suitable boards, suitable sleeves or other approved means. [300.5(F)]

#### E3803.6 Raceway seals.

Conduits or raceways shall be sealed or plugged at either or both ends where moisture will enter and contact live parts. [300.5(G)]

#### E3803.7 Bushing.

A bushing, or terminal fitting, with an integral bushed opening shall be installed on the end of a conduit or other raceway that terminates underground where the conductors or cables emerge as a direct burial wiring method. A seal incorporating the physical protection characteristics of a bushing shall be considered equivalent to a bushing. [300.5(H)]

~~E3803.8 Single conductors.~~

~~All conductors of the same circuit and, where present, the grounded conductor and all equipment grounding conductors shall be installed in the same raceway or shall be installed in close proximity in the same trench. [300.5(I)]~~

~~Exception: Conductors shall be permitted to be installed in parallel in raceways, multiconductor cables, and direct buried single conductor cables. Each raceway or multiconductor cable shall contain all conductors of the same circuit, including equipment grounding conductors. Each direct buried single conductor cable shall be located in close proximity in the trench to the other single conductor cables in the same parallel set of conductors in the circuit, including equipment grounding conductors. [300.5(I) Exception No.1]~~

~~E3803.9 Earth movement.~~

~~Where direct buried conductors, raceways or cables are subject to movement by settlement or frost, direct buried conductors, raceways or cables shall be arranged to prevent damage to the enclosed conductors or to equipment connected to the raceways. [300.5(J)]~~

~~E3803.10 Wet locations.~~

~~The interior of enclosures or raceways installed underground shall be considered to be a wet location. Insulated conductors and cables installed in such enclosures or raceways in underground installations shall be listed for use in wet locations. Connections or splices in an underground installation shall be approved for wet locations. [300.5(B)]~~

~~E3803.11 Under buildings.~~

~~Underground cable and conductors installed under a building shall be in a raceway. [300.5(C)]~~

~~Exception: Type MC Cable shall be permitted under a building without installation in a raceway where the cable is listed and identified for direct burial or concrete encasement and one or more of the following applies:~~

- ~~1. The metallic covering is impervious to moisture.~~
- ~~2. A moisture impervious jacket is provided under the metal covering.~~
- ~~3. The insulated conductors under the metallic covering are listed for use in wet locations, and a corrosion resistant jacket is provided over the metallic sheath. [300.5(C) Exception No.2]~~

**CHAPTER 39  
POWER AND LIGHTING DISTRIBUTION**

RESERVED

~~SECTION E3901~~~~RECEPTACLE OUTLETS~~~~E3901.1 General.~~

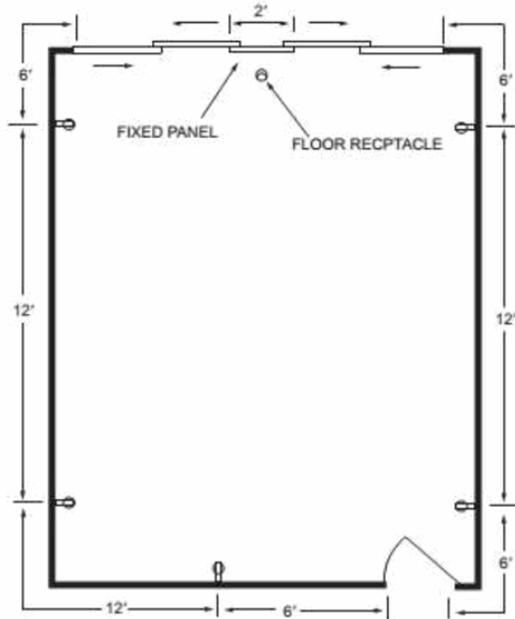
~~Outlets for receptacles rated at 125 volts, 15- and 20- amperes shall be provided in accordance with Sections E3901.2 through E3901.11. Receptacle outlets required by this section shall be in addition to any receptacle that is:~~

- ~~1. Part of a luminaire or appliance;~~
- ~~2. Located within cabinets or cupboards;~~
- ~~3. Controlled by a wall switch in accordance with Section E3903.2, Exception 1; or~~
- ~~4. Located over 5.5 feet (1676 mm) above the floor.~~

~~Permanently installed electric baseboard heaters equipped with factory installed receptacle outlets, or outlets provided as a separate assembly by the baseboard manufacturer shall be permitted as the required outlet or outlets for the wall space utilized by such permanently installed heaters. Such receptacle outlets shall not be connected to the heater circuits. (210.52)~~

~~E3901.2 General purpose receptacle distribution.~~

~~In every kitchen, family room, dining room, living room, parlor, library, den, sun room, bedroom, recreation room, or similar room or area of dwelling units, receptacle outlets shall be installed in accordance with the general provisions specified in Sections E3901.2.1 through E3901.2.3 (see Figure E3901.2).~~



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE E3901.2

#### GENERAL USE RECEPTACLE DISTRIBUTION

##### E3901.2.1 Spacing.

Receptacles shall be installed so that no point measured horizontally along the floor line of any wall space is more than 6 feet (1829 mm), from a receptacle outlet. [210.52(A)(1)]

##### E3901.2.2 Wall space.

As used in this section, a wall space shall include the following: [210.52(A)(2)]

1. Any space that is 2 feet (610 mm) or more in width, including space measured around corners, and that is unbroken along the floor line by doorways and similar openings, fireplaces, and fixed cabinets.
2. The space occupied by fixed panels in exterior walls, excluding sliding panels.
3. The space created by fixed room dividers such as railings and freestanding bar type counters.

##### E3901.2.3 Floor receptacles.

Receptacle outlets in floors shall not be counted as part of the required number of receptacle outlets except where located within 18 inches (457 mm) of the wall. [210.52(A)(3)]

~~E3901.2.4 Countertop receptacles.~~

~~Receptacles installed for countertop surfaces as specified in Section E3901.4 shall not be considered as the receptacles required by Section E3901.2. [210.52(A)(4)]~~

~~E3901.3 Small appliance receptacles.~~

~~In the kitchen, pantry, breakfast room, dining room, or similar area of a dwelling unit, the two or more 20 ampere small appliance branch circuits required by Section E3703.2, shall serve all wall and floor receptacle outlets covered by Sections E3901.2 and E3901.4 and those receptacle outlets provided for refrigeration appliances. [210.52(B)(1)]~~

~~Exceptions:~~

~~1. In addition to the required receptacles specified by Sections E3901.1 and E3901.2, switched receptacles supplied from a general purpose branch circuit as defined in Section E3903.2, Exception 1 shall be permitted. [210.52(B)(1) Exception No. 1]~~

~~2. The receptacle outlet for refrigeration appliances shall be permitted to be supplied from an individual branch circuit rated at 15 amperes or greater. [210.52(B)(1) Exception No. 2]~~

~~E3901.3.1 Other outlets prohibited.~~

~~The two or more small appliance branch circuits specified in Section E3901.3 shall serve no other outlets. [210.52(B)(2)]~~

~~Exceptions:~~

~~1. A receptacle installed solely for the electrical supply to and support of an electric clock in any of the rooms specified in Section E3901.3. [210.52(B)(2) Exception No. 1]~~

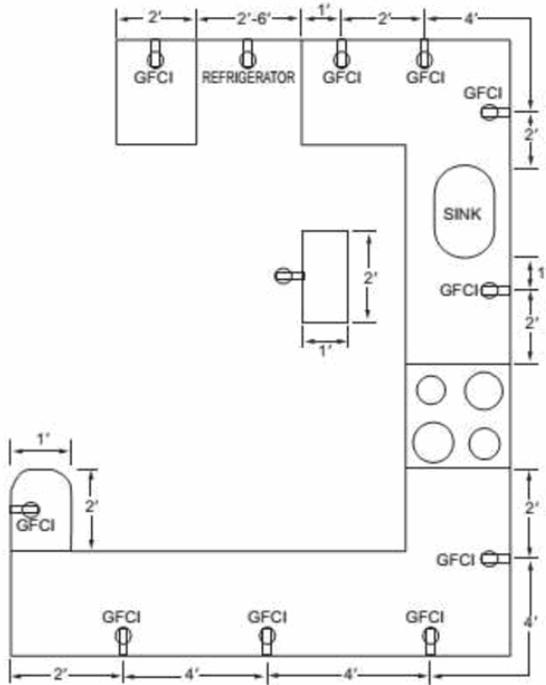
~~2. Receptacles installed to provide power for supplemental equipment and lighting on gas fired ranges, ovens, and counter mounted cooking units. [210.52(B)(2) Exception No. 2]~~

~~E3901.3.2 Limitations.~~

~~Receptacles installed in a kitchen to serve countertop surfaces shall be supplied by not less than two small appliance branch circuits, either or both of which shall also be permitted to supply receptacle outlets in the same kitchen and in other rooms specified in Section E3901.3. Additional small appliance branch circuits shall be permitted to supply receptacle outlets in the kitchen and other rooms specified in Section E3901.3. A small appliance branch circuit shall not serve more than one kitchen. [210.52(B)(3)]~~

~~E3901.4 Countertop receptacles.~~

In kitchens, pantries, breakfast rooms, dining rooms and similar areas of dwelling units, receptacle outlets for countertop spaces shall be installed in accordance with Sections E3901.4.1 through E3901.4.5 (see Figure E3901.4). [210.52(C)]



For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

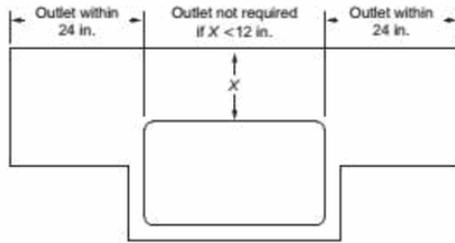
FIGURE E3901.4

#### COUNTERTOP RECEPTACLES

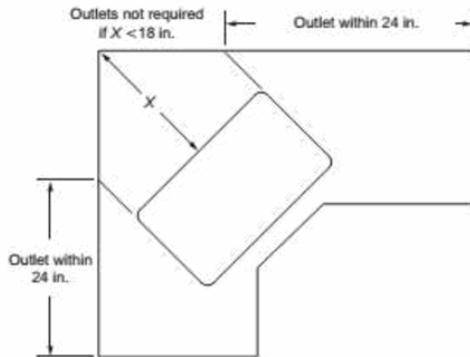
##### E3901.4.1 Wall countertop space.

A receptacle outlet shall be installed at each wall countertop space 12 inches (305 mm) or wider. Receptacle outlets shall be installed so that no point along the wall line is more than 24 inches (610 mm), measured horizontally from a receptacle outlet in that space. [210.52(C)(1)]

Exception: Receptacle outlets shall not be required on a wall directly behind a range, counter mounted cooking unit or sink in the installation described in Figure E3901.4.1. [210.52(C)(1) Exception]



Sink, range or counter-mounted cooking unit extending from face of counter



Sink, range or counter-mounted cooking unit mounted in corner

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

#### FIGURE E3901.4.1

#### DETERMINATION OF AREA BEHIND SINK OR RANGE

##### E3901.4.2 Island countertop spaces.

At least one receptacle outlet shall be installed at each island countertop space with a long dimension of 24 inches (610 mm) or greater and a short dimension of 12 inches (305 mm) or greater. [210.52(C)(2)]

##### E3901.4.3 Peninsular countertop space.

At least one receptacle outlet shall be installed at each peninsular countertop space with a long dimension of 24 inches (610 mm) or greater and a short dimension of 12 inches (305 mm) or greater. A peninsular countertop is measured from the connecting edge. [210.52(C)(3)]

##### E3901.4.4 Separate spaces.

Countertop spaces separated by range tops, refrigerators, or sinks shall be considered as separate countertop spaces in applying the requirements of Sections E3901.4.1, E3901.4.2 and E3901.4.3. Where a range, counter mounted cooking unit, or sink is installed in an island or peninsular countertop and the depth of the countertop behind the range, counter mounted cooking unit, or sink is less than 12 inches (305 mm), the range, counter mounted cooking unit, or sink has divided the countertop space into two

~~separate countertop spaces as defined in Section E3901.4.4. Each separate countertop space shall comply with the applicable requirements of this section. [210.52(C)(4)]~~

~~E3901.4.5 Receptacle outlet location.~~

~~Receptacle outlets shall be located not more than 20 inches (508 mm) above the countertop. Receptacle outlet assemblies installed in countertops shall be listed for the application. Receptacle outlets shall not be installed in a face-up position in the work surfaces or countertops. Receptacle outlets rendered not readily accessible by appliances fastened in place, appliance garages, sinks or rangetops as addressed in the exception to Section E3901.4.1, or appliances occupying dedicated space shall not be considered as these required outlets. [210.52(C)(5)]~~

~~Exception: Receptacle outlets shall be permitted to be mounted not more than 12 inches (305 mm) below the countertop in construction designed for the physically impaired and for island and peninsular countertops where the countertop is flat across its entire surface and there are no means to mount a receptacle within 20 inches (508 mm) above the countertop, such as in an overhead cabinet. Receptacles mounted below the countertop in accordance with this exception shall not be located where the countertop extends more than 6 inches (152 mm) beyond its support base. [210.52(C)(5) Exception]~~

~~E3901.5 Appliance receptacle outlets.~~

~~Appliance receptacle outlets installed for specific appliances, such as laundry equipment, shall be installed within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the intended location of the appliance. (210.50(C))~~

~~E3901.6 Bathroom.~~

~~At least one wall receptacle outlet shall be installed in bathrooms and such outlet shall be located within 36 inches (914 mm) of the outside edge of each lavatory basin. The receptacle outlet shall be located on a wall or partition that is adjacent to the lavatory basin location, located on the countertop, or installed on the side or face of the basin cabinet. The receptacle shall be located not more than 12 inches (305 mm) below the top of the basin.~~

~~Receptacle outlets shall not be installed in a face-up position in the work surfaces or countertops in a bathroom basin location. Receptacle outlet assemblies installed in countertops shall be listed for the application. [210.52(D)]~~

~~E3901.7 Outdoor outlets.~~

~~Not less than one receptacle outlet that is readily accessible from grade level and located not more than 6 feet, 6 inches (1981 mm) above grade, shall be installed outdoors at the front and back of each dwelling unit having direct access to grade level. Balconies, decks, and porches that are accessible from inside of the dwelling unit shall have at least one receptacle outlet installed within the perimeter of the balcony, deck, or porch. The receptacle shall be located not more than 6 feet, 6 inches (1981 mm) above the balcony, deck, or porch surface. [210.52(E)]~~

~~E3901.8 Laundry areas.~~

~~Not less than one receptacle outlet shall be installed in areas designated for the installation of laundry equipment.~~

~~E3901.9 Basements, garages and accessory buildings.~~

~~Not less than one receptacle outlet, in addition to any provided for specific equipment, shall be installed in each separate unfinished portion of a basement, in each attached garage, and in each detached garage or accessory building that is provided with electrical power. The branch circuit supplying the receptacle(s) in a garage shall not supply outlets outside of the garage and not less than one receptacle outlet shall be installed for each motor vehicle space. [210.52(G)(1), (2), and (3)]~~

~~E3901.10 Hallways.~~

~~Hallways of 10 feet (3048 mm) or more in length shall have at least one receptacle outlet. The hall length shall be considered the length measured along the centerline of the hall without passing through a doorway. [210.52(H)]~~

~~E3901.11 Foyers.~~

~~Foyers that are not part of a hallway in accordance with Section E3901.10 and that have an area that is greater than 60 ft<sup>2</sup> (5.57 m<sup>2</sup>) shall have a receptacle(s) located in each wall space that is 3 feet (914 mm) or more in width. Doorways, door-side windows that extend to the floor, and similar openings shall not be considered as wall space. [210.52(H)]~~

~~E3901.12 HVAC outlet.~~

~~A 125-volt, single phase, 15- or 20-ampere rated receptacle outlet shall be installed at an accessible location for the servicing of heating, air conditioning and refrigeration equipment. The receptacle shall be located on the same level and within 25 feet (7620 mm) of the heating, air conditioning and refrigeration equipment. The receptacle outlet shall not be connected to the load side of the HVAC equipment disconnecting means. (210.63)~~

~~Exception: A receptacle outlet shall not be required for the servicing of evaporative coolers. (210.63 Exception)~~

~~SECTION E3902~~~~GROUND FAULT AND ARC FAULT  
CIRCUIT INTERRUPTER PROTECTION~~~~E3902.1 Bathroom receptacles.~~

~~125-volt, single phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in bathrooms shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. [210.8(A)(1)]~~

~~E3902.2 Garage and accessory building receptacles.~~

~~125-volt, single-phase, 15- or 20-ampere receptacles installed in garages and grade-level portions of unfinished accessory buildings used for storage or work areas shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. [210.8(A)(2)]~~

~~E3902.3 Outdoor receptacles.~~

~~125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed outdoors shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. [210.8(A)(3)]~~

~~Exception: Receptacles as covered in Section E4101.7. [210.8(A)(3) Exception]~~

~~E3902.4 Crawl space receptacles.~~

~~Where a crawl space is at or below grade level, 125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in such spaces shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. [210.8(A)(4)]~~

~~E3902.5 Unfinished basement receptacles.~~

~~125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in unfinished basements shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. For purposes of this section, unfinished basements are defined as portions or areas of the basement not intended as habitable rooms and limited to storage areas, work areas, and similar areas. [210.8(A)(5)]~~

~~Exception: A receptacle supplying only a permanently installed fire alarm or burglar alarm system. Receptacles installed in accordance with this exception shall not be considered as meeting the requirement of Section E3901.9. [210.8(A)(5) Exception]~~

~~E3902.6 Kitchen receptacles.~~

~~125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles that serve countertop surfaces shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. [210.8(A)(6)]~~

~~E3902.7 Sink receptacles.~~

~~125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles that are located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the outside edge of a sink shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. Receptacle outlets shall not be installed in a face-up position in the work surfaces or countertops. [210.8(A)(7)]~~

~~E3902.8 Bathtub or shower stall receptacles.~~

~~125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles that are located within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the outside edge of a bathtub or shower stall shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. [210.8(A)(8)]~~

~~E3902.9 Laundry areas.~~

~~125-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere receptacles installed in laundry areas shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. [210.8(A)(9)]~~

~~E3902.10 Kitchen dishwasher branch circuit.~~

~~Ground fault circuit interrupter protection shall be provided for outlets that supply dishwashers in dwelling unit locations. [210.8(D)]~~

~~E3902.11 Boathouse receptacles.~~

~~125-volt, single-phase, 15- or 20-ampere receptacles installed in boathouses shall have ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. [210.8(A)(8)]~~

~~E3902.12 Boat hoists.~~

~~Ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel shall be provided for 240-volt and less outlets that supply boat hoists. [210.8(C)]~~

~~E3902.13 Electrically heated floors.~~

~~Ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel shall be provided for electrically heated floors in bathrooms, kitchens and in hydromassage bathtub, spa and hot tub locations. [424.44(G)]~~

~~E3902.14 Location of ground fault circuit interrupters.~~

~~Ground fault circuit interrupters shall be installed in a readily accessible location. [210.8(A)]~~

~~E3902.15 Location of arc fault circuit interrupters.~~

~~Arc fault circuit interrupters shall be installed in readily accessible locations.~~

~~E3902.16 Arc fault circuit interrupter protection.~~

~~Branch circuits that supply 120-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere outlets installed in kitchens, family rooms, dining rooms, living rooms, parlors, libraries, dens, bedrooms, sun rooms, recreation rooms, closets, hallways, laundry areas and similar rooms or areas shall be protected by any of the following: [210.12(A)]~~

~~1. A listed combination type arc fault circuit interrupter, installed to provide protection of the entire branch circuit. [210.12(A)(1)]~~

~~2. A listed branch/feeder type AFCI installed at the origin of the branch circuit in combination with a listed outlet branch circuit type arc fault circuit interrupter installed at the first outlet box on the branch circuit. The first outlet box in the branch circuit shall be marked to indicate that it is the first outlet of the circuit. [210.12(A)(2)]~~

~~3. A listed supplemental arc protection circuit breaker installed at the origin of the branch circuit in combination with a listed outlet branch circuit type arc fault circuit interrupter installed at the first outlet box on the branch circuit where all of the following conditions are met:~~

~~3.1. The branch circuit wiring shall be continuous from the branch circuit overcurrent device to the outlet branch circuit arc fault circuit interrupter.~~

~~3.2. The maximum length of the branch circuit wiring from the branch circuit overcurrent device to the first outlet shall not exceed 50 feet (15.2 m) for 14 AWG conductors and 70 feet (21.3 m) for 12 AWG conductors.~~

~~3.3. The first outlet box on the branch circuit shall be marked to indicate that it is the first outlet on the circuit. [210.12(A)(3)]~~

~~4. A listed outlet branch circuit type arc fault circuit interrupter installed at the first outlet on the branch circuit in combination with a listed branch circuit overcurrent protective device where all of the following conditions are met:~~

~~4.1. The branch circuit wiring shall be continuous from the branch circuit overcurrent device to the outlet branch circuit arc fault circuit interrupter.~~

~~4.2. The maximum length of the branch circuit wiring from the branch circuit overcurrent device to the first outlet shall not exceed 50 feet (15.2 m) for 14 AWG conductors and 70 feet (21.3 m) for 12 AWG conductors.~~

~~4.3. The first outlet box on the branch circuit shall be marked to indicate that it is the first outlet on the circuit.~~

~~4.4. The combination of the branch circuit overcurrent device and outlet branch circuit AFCI shall be identified as meeting the requirements for a system combination type AFCI and shall be listed as such. [210.12(A)(4)]~~

~~5. Where metal outlet boxes and junction boxes and RMC, IMC, EMT, Type MC or steel armored Type AC cables meeting the requirements of Section E3908.8, metal wireways or metal auxiliary gutters are installed for the portion of the branch circuit between the branch circuit overcurrent device and the first outlet, a listed outlet branch circuit type AFCI installed at the first outlet shall be considered as providing protection for the remaining portion of the branch circuit. [210.12(A)(5)]~~

~~6. Where a listed metal or nonmetallic conduit or tubing or Type MC cable is encased in not less than 2 inches (50.8 mm) of concrete for the portion of the branch circuit between the branch circuit overcurrent device and the first outlet, a listed outlet branch circuit type AFCI installed at the first outlet shall be considered as providing protection for the remaining portion of the branch circuit. [210.12(A)(6)]~~

~~Exception: AFCI protection is not required for an individual branch circuit supplying only a fire alarm system where the branch circuit is wired with metal outlet and junction boxes and RMC, IMC, EMT or steel sheathed armored cable Type AC or Type MC meeting the requirements of Section E3908.8.~~

~~E3902.17 Arc fault circuit interrupter protection for branch circuit extensions or modifications.~~

~~Where branch circuit wiring is modified, replaced, or extended in any of the areas specified in Section E3902.16, the branch circuit shall be protected by one of the following:~~

- ~~1. A combination type AFCI located at the origin of the branch circuit~~
- ~~2. An outlet branch circuit type AFCI located at the first receptacle outlet of the existing branch circuit. [210.12(B)]~~

~~Exception: AFCI protection shall not be required where the extension of the existing conductors is not more than 6 feet (1.8 m) in length and does not include any additional outlets or devices. [210.12(B) Exception]~~

### ~~SECTION E3903 LIGHTING OUTLETS~~

#### ~~E3903.1 General.~~

~~Lighting outlets shall be provided in accordance with Sections E3903.2 through E3903.4. [210.70(A)]~~

#### ~~E3903.2 Habitable rooms.~~

~~At least one wall switch controlled lighting outlet shall be installed in every habitable room and bathroom. [210.70(A)(1)]~~

#### ~~Exceptions:~~

- ~~1. In other than kitchens and bathrooms, one or more receptacles controlled by a wall switch shall be considered equivalent to the required lighting outlet. [210.70(A)(1) Exception No. 1]~~
- ~~2. Lighting outlets shall be permitted to be controlled by occupancy sensors that are in addition to wall switches, or that are located at a customary wall switch location and equipped with a manual override that will allow the sensor to function as a wall switch. [210.70(A)(1) Exception No. 2]~~

#### ~~E3903.3 Additional locations.~~

~~At least one wall switch controlled lighting outlet shall be installed in hallways, stairways, attached garages, and detached garages with electric power. At least one wall switch controlled lighting outlet shall be installed to provide illumination on the exterior side of each outdoor egress door having grade level access, including outdoor egress doors for attached garages and detached garages with electric power. A vehicle door in a garage shall not be considered as an outdoor egress door. Where one or more lighting outlets are installed for interior stairways, there shall be a wall switch at each floor level~~

and landing level that includes an entryway to control the lighting outlets where the stairway between floor levels has six or more risers. [210.70(A)(2)]

Exception: In hallways, stairways, and at outdoor egress doors, remote, central, or automatic control of lighting shall be permitted. [210.70(A)(2) Exception]

E3903.4 Storage or equipment spaces.

In attics, under floor spaces, utility rooms and basements, at least one lighting outlet shall be installed where these spaces are used for storage or contain equipment requiring servicing. Such lighting outlet shall be controlled by a wall switch or shall have an integral switch. At least one point of control shall be at the usual point of entry to these spaces. The lighting outlet shall be provided at or near the equipment requiring servicing. [210.70(A)(3)]

## SECTION E3904

### GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

E3904.1 Electrical continuity of metal raceways and enclosures.

Metal raceways, cable armor and other metal enclosures for conductors shall be mechanically joined together into a continuous electric conductor and shall be connected to all boxes, fittings and cabinets so as to provide effective electrical continuity. Raceways and cable assemblies shall be mechanically secured to boxes, fittings cabinets and other enclosures. (300.10)

Exception: Short sections of raceway used to provide cable assemblies with support or protection against physical damage. (300.10 Exception No. 1)

E3904.2 Mechanical continuity—raceways and cables.

Metal or nonmetallic raceways, cable armors and cable sheaths shall be continuous between cabinets, boxes, fittings or other enclosures or outlets.

Exception: Short sections of raceway used to provide cable assemblies with support or protection against physical damage. (300.12 Exception No. 1)

E3904.3 Securing and supporting.

Raceways, cable assemblies, boxes, cabinets and fittings shall be securely fastened in place. (300.11)

E3904.3.1 Prohibited means of support.

Cable wiring methods shall not be used as a means of support for other cables, raceways and nonelectrical equipment. [300.11(C)]

E3904.4 Raceways as means of support.

Raceways shall be used as a means of support for other raceways, cables or non-electric equipment only under the following conditions:

1. Where the raceway or means of support is identified as a means of support; or
2. Where the raceway contains power supply conductors for electrically controlled equipment and is used to support Class 2 circuit conductors or cables that are solely for the purpose of connection to the control circuits of the equipment served by such raceway; or
3. Where the raceway is used to support boxes or conduit bodies in accordance with Sections E3906.8.4 and E3906.8.5. [300.11(B)]

**E3904.5 Raceway installations.**

Raceways shall be installed complete between outlet, junction or splicing points prior to the installation of conductors. (300.19)

Exception: Short sections of raceways used to contain conductors or cable assemblies for protection from physical damage shall not be required to be installed complete between outlet, junction, or splicing points. (300.18 Exception)

**E3904.6 Conduit and tubing fill.**

The maximum number of conductors installed in conduit or tubing shall be in accordance with Tables E3904.6(1) through E3904.6(10). (300.17, Chapter 9, Table 1 and Annex C)

TABLE E3904.6(1) (Annex C, Table C.1)

**MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)<sup>a</sup>**

| TYPE LETTERS    | CONDUCTOR SIZE<br>AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) |     |    |       |       |    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----|----|-------|-------|----|
|                 |                             | 1/2                  | 3/4 | 1  | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2 | 14                          | 4                    | 7   | 11 | 20    | 27    | 46 |
|                 | 12                          | 3                    | 6   | 9  | 17    | 23    | 38 |
|                 | 10                          | 2                    | 5   | 8  | 13    | 18    | 30 |
|                 | 8                           | 1                    | 2   | 4  | 7     | 9     | 16 |
|                 | 6                           | 1                    | 1   | 2  | 5     | 8     | 13 |

|   |     |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|---|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|   | 4   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 10 |
|   | 3   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 4  | 5  | 9  |
|   | 2   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
|   | 1   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
|   | 1/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
|   | 2/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
|   | 3/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
|   | 4/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
|   | 14  | 8 | 15 | 25 | 43 | 58 | 96 |
|   | 12  | 6 | 11 | 19 | 33 | 45 | 74 |
| <del>TW, THHW, THW, THW 2</del>                     | 10  | 5 | 8  | 14 | 24 | 33 | 55 |
|   | 8   | 2 | 5  | 8  | 13 | 18 | 30 |
|   | 14  | 6 | 10 | 16 | 28 | 39 | 64 |
|   | 12  | 4 | 8  | 13 | 23 | 31 | 51 |
| <del>RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a</del>                       | 10  | 3 | 6  | 10 | 18 | 24 | 40 |
|   | 8   | 1 | 4  | 6  | 10 | 14 | 24 |
|   | 6   | 1 | 3  | 4  | 8  | 11 | 18 |
| <del>RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a, TW, THW, THHW, THW 2</del> | 4   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 13 |
|   | 3   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 12 |
|   | 2   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 10 |

|                    |     |    |    |    |    |     |
|--------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|                    | 1   | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 7   |
|                    | 1/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 6   |
|                    | 2/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 5   |
|                    | 3/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |
|                    | 4/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 3   |
|                    | 14  | 12 | 22 | 35 | 61 | 138 |
|                    | 12  | 9  | 16 | 26 | 45 | 101 |
|                    | 10  | 5  | 10 | 16 | 28 | 63  |
|                    | 8   | 4  | 6  | 9  | 16 | 36  |
|                    | 6   | 2  | 4  | 7  | 12 | 26  |
|                    | 4   | 1  | 2  | 4  | 7  | 16  |
| THHN, THWN, THWN-2 | 3   | 1  | 1  | 3  | 6  | 13  |
|                    | 2   | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 11  |
|                    | 1   | 1  | 1  | 1  | 4  | 8   |
|                    | 1/0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 7   |
|                    | 2/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 6   |
|                    | 3/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 5   |
|                    | 4/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 4   |
| XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2  | 14  | 8  | 15 | 25 | 43 | 96  |
|                    | 12  | 6  | 11 | 19 | 33 | 74  |

|     |    |    |     |     |     |     |
|-----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1/0 | 5  | 8  | 14  | 24  | 32  | 55  |
| 2/0 | 7  | 9  | 16  | 28  | 40  | 66  |
| 3/0 | 9  | 12 | 20  | 36  | 50  | 83  |
| 4/0 | 12 | 16 | 26  | 48  | 66  | 108 |
| 1   | 14 | 18 | 30  | 54  | 74  | 120 |
| 2   | 18 | 24 | 40  | 72  | 100 | 158 |
| 3   | 24 | 30 | 50  | 90  | 124 | 200 |
| 4   | 30 | 36 | 60  | 108 | 148 | 240 |
| 6   | 42 | 54 | 90  | 162 | 220 | 348 |
| 8   | 54 | 72 | 120 | 216 | 292 | 456 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

TABLE E3904.6(2) (Annex C, Table C.2)

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN ELECTRICAL NONMETALLIC TUBING (ENT)<sup>a</sup>

| TYPE LETTERS    | CONDUCTOR SIZE<br>AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) |     |    |       |       |    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----|----|-------|-------|----|
|                 |                             | 1/2                  | 3/4 | 1  | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2 | 14                          | 3                    | 6   | 10 | 18    | 26    | 43 |
|                 | 12                          | 2                    | 5   | 9  | 16    | 22    | 36 |
|                 | 10                          | 1                    | 4   | 7  | 13    | 17    | 29 |
|                 | 8                           | 1                    | 1   | 3  | 6     | 9     | 15 |

|  |     |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|--|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|  | 6   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 12 |
|  | 4   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 9  |
|  | 3   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 8  |
|  | 2   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
|  | 1   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
|  | 1/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
|  | 2/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
|  | 3/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2                          | 4/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  |
|  | 14  | 7 | 13 | 22 | 40 | 55 | 92 |
|  | 12  | 5 | 10 | 17 | 31 | 42 | 71 |
| TW, THHW, THW, THW-2                     | 10  | 4 | 7  | 13 | 23 | 32 | 52 |
|  | 8   | 1 | 4  | 7  | 13 | 17 | 29 |
|  | 14  | 4 | 8  | 15 | 27 | 37 | 61 |
|  | 12  | 3 | 7  | 12 | 21 | 29 | 49 |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW-2a                       | 10  | 3 | 5  | 9  | 17 | 23 | 38 |
|  | 8   | 1 | 3  | 5  | 10 | 14 | 23 |
|  | 6   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 7  | 10 | 17 |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW-2a, TW, THW, THHW, THW-2 | 4   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 8  | 13 |
|  | 3   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 5  | 7  | 11 |

|                           |     |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|---------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|                           | 2   | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 9   |
|                           | 1   | 0  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 6   |
|                           | 1/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 5   |
|                           | 2/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5   |
|                           | 3/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |
|                           | 4/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3   |
|                           | 14  | 10 | 18 | 32 | 58 | 80 | 132 |
|                           | 12  | 7  | 13 | 23 | 42 | 58 | 96  |
|                           | 10  | 4  | 8  | 15 | 26 | 36 | 60  |
|                           | 8   | 2  | 5  | 8  | 15 | 21 | 35  |
| <u>THHN, THWN, THWN 2</u> | 6   | 1  | 3  | 6  | 11 | 15 | 25  |
|                           | 4   | 1  | 1  | 4  | 7  | 9  | 15  |
|                           | 3   | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 8  | 13  |
|                           | 2   | 1  | 1  | 2  | 5  | 6  | 11  |
|                           | 1   | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 8   |
|                           | 1/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7   |
| <u>THHN, THWN, THWN 2</u> | 2/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 5   |
|                           | 3/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4   |
|                           | 4/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |
| <u>XHH, XHHW, XHHW 2</u>  | 14  | 7  | 13 | 22 | 40 | 55 | 92  |

|     |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|
| 12  | 5 | 10 | 17 | 24 | 42 | 71 |
| 10  | 4 | 7  | 13 | 23 | 32 | 53 |
| 8   | 4 | 4  | 7  | 13 | 17 | 29 |
| 6   | 4 | 3  | 5  | 9  | 13 | 21 |
| 4   | 4 | 1  | 4  | 7  | 9  | 15 |
| 3   | 4 | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 13 |
| 2   | 4 | 1  | 2  | 5  | 6  | 11 |
| 1   | 4 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 8  |
| 1/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
| 2/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6  |
| 3/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
| 4/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

TABLE E3904.6(3) (Annex C, Table C.3)

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN FLEXIBLE METALLIC CONDUIT (FMC)<sup>a</sup>

| TYPE LETTERS    | CONDUCTOR SIZE<br>AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) |     |    |       |       |    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----|----|-------|-------|----|
|                 |                             | 1/2                  | 3/4 | 1  | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2 | 14                          | 4                    | 7   | 11 | 17    | 25    | 44 |
|                 | 12                          | 3                    | 6   | 9  | 14    | 21    | 37 |
|                 | 10                          | 3                    | 5   | 7  | 11    | 17    | 30 |

|  |     |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|--|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|  | 8   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 6  | 9  | 15 |
|  | 6   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 11 |
|  | 4   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 5  | 10 |
|  | 3   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  |
|  | 2   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
|  | 1   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 5  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW 2                          | 1/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
|  | 2/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
|  | 3/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
|  | 14  | 9 | 15 | 23 | 36 | 53 | 94 |
|  | 12  | 7 | 11 | 18 | 28 | 41 | 72 |
| TW, THHW, THW, THW 2                     | 10  | 5 | 8  | 13 | 21 | 30 | 54 |
|  | 8   | 3 | 5  | 7  | 11 | 17 | 30 |
|  | 14  | 6 | 10 | 15 | 24 | 35 | 62 |
|  | 12  | 5 | 8  | 12 | 19 | 28 | 50 |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a                       | 10  | 4 | 6  | 10 | 15 | 22 | 39 |
|  | 8   | 1 | 4  | 6  | 9  | 13 | 23 |
|  | 6   | 1 | 3  | 4  | 7  | 10 | 18 |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a, TW, THW, THHW, THW 2 | 4   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 13 |
|  | 3   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 4  | 6  | 11 |

|                    |     |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|--------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|                    | 2   | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 5  | 10  |
|                    | 1   | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 4  | 7   |
|                    | 1/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 6   |
|                    | 2/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5   |
|                    | 3/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |
|                    | 4/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3   |
|                    | 4/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2   |
|                    | 14  | 13 | 22 | 33 | 52 | 76 | 134 |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2 | 12  | 9  | 16 | 24 | 38 | 56 | 98  |
|                    | 10  | 6  | 10 | 15 | 24 | 35 | 62  |
|                    | 8   | 3  | 6  | 9  | 14 | 20 | 35  |
|                    | 6   | 2  | 4  | 6  | 10 | 14 | 25  |
|                    | 4   | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 9  | 16  |
|                    | 3   | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 13  |
|                    | 2   | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 6  | 11  |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2 | 1   | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 4  | 9   |
|                    | 1/0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 7   |
|                    | 2/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 6   |
|                    | 3/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 5   |
|                    | 4/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 4   |

|                   |     |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|-------------------|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|                   | 14  | 9 | 15 | 22 | 36 | 52 | 94 |
|                   | 12  | 7 | 11 | 18 | 28 | 41 | 72 |
|                   | 10  | 5 | 8  | 13 | 21 | 30 | 54 |
|                   | 8   | 3 | 5  | 7  | 11 | 17 | 30 |
|                   | 6   | 1 | 3  | 5  | 8  | 12 | 22 |
|                   | 4   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 6  | 9  | 16 |
| XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2 | 3   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 13 |
|                   | 2   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 11 |
|                   | 1   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 8  |
|                   | 1/0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 7  |
|                   | 2/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6  |
|                   | 3/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
|                   | 4/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

TABLE E3904.6(4) (Annex C, Table C.4)

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN INTERMEDIATE METALLIC CONDUIT (IMC)<sup>a</sup>

| TYPE LETTERS    | CONDUCTOR SIZE<br>AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) |     |    |       |       |    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----|----|-------|-------|----|
|                 |                             | 1/2                  | 3/4 | 1  | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2 | 14                          | 4                    | 8   | 13 | 22    | 30    | 49 |
|                 | 12                          | 4                    | 6   | 11 | 18    | 25    | 41 |

|                                    |     |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|                                    | 10  | 4  | 5  | 8  | 15 | 20 | 33  |
|                                    | 8   | 4  | 4  | 4  | 8  | 10 | 17  |
|                                    | 6   | 4  | 4  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 14  |
|                                    | 4   | 4  | 4  | 3  | 5  | 6  | 11  |
|                                    | 3   | 4  | 4  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 9   |
|                                    | 2   | 4  | 4  | 4  | 3  | 5  | 8   |
|                                    | 1   | 0  | 4  | 4  | 2  | 3  | 5   |
|                                    | 1/0 | 0  | 4  | 4  | 4  | 3  | 4   |
|                                    | 2/0 | 0  | 4  | 4  | 4  | 2  | 4   |
|                                    | 3/0 | 0  | 0  | 4  | 4  | 4  | 3   |
|                                    | 4/0 | 0  | 0  | 4  | 4  | 4  | 3   |
|                                    | 14  | 10 | 17 | 27 | 47 | 64 | 104 |
|                                    | 12  | 7  | 13 | 21 | 36 | 49 | 80  |
| TW, THHW, THW, THW 2               | 10  | 5  | 9  | 15 | 27 | 36 | 59  |
|                                    | 8   | 3  | 5  | 8  | 15 | 20 | 33  |
|                                    | 14  | 6  | 11 | 18 | 31 | 42 | 69  |
|                                    | 12  | 5  | 9  | 14 | 25 | 34 | 56  |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a                 | 10  | 4  | 7  | 11 | 19 | 26 | 43  |
|                                    | 8   | 2  | 4  | 7  | 12 | 16 | 26  |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a, TW, THW, THHW, | 6   | 4  | 3  | 5  | 9  | 12 | 20  |

|                    |     |    |    |    |    |     |    |
|--------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|----|
| THW 2              | 4   | 4  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 9   | 15 |
|                    | 3   | 4  | 4  | 3  | 6  | 8   | 13 |
|                    | 2   | 4  | 4  | 3  | 5  | 6   | 11 |
|                    | 1   | 4  | 4  | 1  | 3  | 4   | 7  |
| 1/0                | 1   | 4  | 4  | 1  | 3  | 4   | 6  |
| 2/0                | 0   | 4  | 4  | 2  | 3  | 3   | 5  |
| 3/0                | 0   | 4  | 4  | 1  | 1  | 3   | 4  |
| 4/0                | 0   | 4  | 4  | 1  | 1  | 2   | 4  |
| 14                 | 14  | 24 | 39 | 68 | 91 | 149 |    |
| 12                 | 10  | 17 | 29 | 49 | 67 | 109 |    |
| 10                 | 6   | 11 | 18 | 31 | 42 | 68  |    |
| 8                  | 3   | 6  | 10 | 18 | 24 | 39  |    |
| 6                  | 2   | 4  | 7  | 13 | 17 | 28  |    |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2 | 4   | 4  | 4  | 8  | 10 | 17  |    |
|                    | 3   | 4  | 4  | 6  | 9  | 15  |    |
|                    | 2   | 4  | 4  | 5  | 7  | 12  |    |
|                    | 1   | 4  | 4  | 4  | 5  | 9   |    |
| 1/0                | 1   | 4  | 4  | 3  | 4  | 8   |    |
| 2/0                | 1   | 4  | 4  | 3  | 4  | 6   |    |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2 | 3/0 | 0  | 4  | 4  | 2  | 3   | 5  |

|                   |     |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|-------------------|-----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|                   | 2/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |
|                   | 14  | 10 | 17 | 27 | 47 | 64 | 104 |
|                   | 12  | 7  | 13 | 21 | 36 | 49 | 80  |
|                   | 10  | 5  | 9  | 15 | 27 | 36 | 59  |
|                   | 8   | 3  | 5  | 8  | 15 | 20 | 33  |
|                   | 6   | 1  | 4  | 6  | 11 | 15 | 24  |
|                   | 4   | 1  | 3  | 4  | 8  | 11 | 18  |
| XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2 | 3   | 1  | 2  | 4  | 7  | 9  | 15  |
|                   | 2   | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 12  |
|                   | 1   | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 5  | 9   |
|                   | 1/0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 9   |
|                   | 2/0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 6   |
|                   | 3/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 5   |
|                   | 4/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

TABLE E3904.6(5) (Annex C, Table C.5)

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN LIQUID TIGHT FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC CONDUIT (FNMC-B)<sup>a</sup>

| TYPE LETTERS    | CONDUCTOR SIZE<br>AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) |     |     |    |       |       |    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----|-----|----|-------|-------|----|
|                 |                             | 3/8                  | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1  | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2 | 14                          | 2                    | 4   | 7   | 12 | 21    | 27    | 44 |

|                      |     |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|----------------------|-----|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|                      | 12  | 1 | 3 | 6  | 10 | 17 | 22 | 36 |
|                      | 10  | 1 | 3 | 5  | 8  | 14 | 18 | 26 |
|                      | 8   | 1 | 1 | 2  | 4  | 7  | 9  | 11 |
|                      | 6   | 1 | 1 | 1  | 3  | 6  | 7  | 12 |
|                      | 4   | 0 | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 9  |
|                      | 3   | 0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 4  | 5  | 8  |
|                      | 2   | 0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
|                      | 1   | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW 2      | 1/0 | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
|                      | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
|                      | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
|                      | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  |
|                      | 14  | 5 | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 57 | 93 |
| TW, THHW, THW, THW 2 | 12  | 4 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 43 | 71 |
|                      | 10  | 3 | 5 | 9  | 14 | 25 | 32 | 53 |
|                      | 8   | 1 | 3 | 5  | 8  | 14 | 18 | 29 |
|                      | 14  | 3 | 6 | 10 | 16 | 29 | 38 | 62 |
|                      | 12  | 3 | 5 | 8  | 13 | 23 | 30 | 50 |
| RHHa, RHWa, RGW 2a   | 10  | 1 | 3 | 6  | 10 | 18 | 23 | 39 |
|                      | 8   | 1 | 1 | 4  | 6  | 11 | 14 | 23 |

|   |     |   |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|---|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|   | 6   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 5  | 8  | 11 | 16  |
|   | 4   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 13  |
|   | 3   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 11  |
|   | 2   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 9   |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a, TW, THW,<br>THHW, THW 2 | 1   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7   |
|   | 1/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6   |
|   | 2/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 5   |
|   | 3/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |
|   | 4/0 | 0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3   |
|   | 14  | 8 | 13 | 22 | 36 | 63 | 81 | 133 |
|   | 12  | 5 | 9  | 16 | 26 | 46 | 59 | 97  |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2                          | 10  | 3 | 6  | 10 | 16 | 29 | 37 | 61  |
|   | 8   | 1 | 3  | 6  | 9  | 16 | 21 | 35  |
|   | 6   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 7  | 12 | 15 | 25  |
|   | 4   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 7  | 9  | 15  |
|   | 3   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 13  |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2                          | 2   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 11  |
|   | 1   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 4  | 5  | 8   |
|   | 1/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7   |
|   | 2/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6   |

|                   |     |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|-------------------|-----|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|                   | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 5  |
|                   | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
|                   | 14  | 5 | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 57 | 93 |
|                   | 12  | 4 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 43 | 71 |
|                   | 10  | 3 | 5 | 9  | 14 | 25 | 32 | 53 |
|                   | 8   | 1 | 3 | 5  | 8  | 14 | 18 | 29 |
|                   | 6   | 1 | 1 | 3  | 6  | 10 | 13 | 22 |
|                   | 4   | 1 | 1 | 2  | 4  | 7  | 9  | 16 |
| XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2 | 3   | 1 | 1 | 1  | 2  | 6  | 8  | 13 |
|                   | 2   | 1 | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 11 |
|                   | 1   | 0 | 1 | 1  | 4  | 5  | 8  | 10 |
|                   | 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
|                   | 2/0 | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6  |
|                   | 3/0 | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
|                   | 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

TABLE E3904.6(6) (Annex C, Table C.6)

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN LIQUID-TIGHT FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC CONDUIT (FNMCA)<sup>a</sup>

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE<br>AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) |     |     |   |       |       |   |
|--------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----|-----|---|-------|-------|---|
|              |                             | 3/8                  | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1 | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2 |
|              |                             |                      |     |     |   |       |       |   |

|                      |    |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|----------------------|----|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|                      | 14 | 2 | 4 | 7  | 11 | 20 | 27 | 45 |
|                      | 12 | 1 | 3 | 6  | 9  | 17 | 23 | 38 |
|                      | 10 | 1 | 3 | 5  | 8  | 13 | 18 | 30 |
|                      | 8  | 1 | 1 | 2  | 4  | 7  | 9  | 16 |
|                      | 6  | 1 | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 13 |
|                      | 4  | 0 | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 10 |
| RHH, RHW, RHW 2      | 3  | 0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 4  | 5  | 8  |
|                      | 2  | 0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
|                      | 1  | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
| 1/0                  |    | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
| 2/0                  |    | 0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 4  |
| 3/0                  |    | 0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
| 4/0                  |    | 0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
| 14                   |    | 5 | 9 | 15 | 24 | 43 | 58 | 96 |
| 12                   |    | 4 | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 44 | 74 |
| TW, THHW, THW, THW 2 | 10 | 3 | 5 | 9  | 14 | 24 | 33 | 55 |
|                      | 8  | 1 | 3 | 5  | 8  | 13 | 18 | 30 |
|                      | 14 | 3 | 6 | 10 | 16 | 28 | 38 | 64 |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a   | 12 | 3 | 4 | 8  | 13 | 23 | 31 | 51 |
|                      | 10 | 1 | 3 | 6  | 10 | 18 | 24 | 40 |

|   |     |   |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|---|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|   | 8   | 1 | 1  | 4  | 6  | 10 | 14 | 24  |
|   | 6   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 4  | 8  | 11 | 18  |
|   | 4   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 13  |
| <del>RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a, TW, THW, THHW, THW 2</del> | 3   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 11  |
|   | 2   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 10  |
|   | 1   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7   |
|   | 1/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6   |
|   | 2/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5   |
| <del>RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a, TW, THW, THHW, THW 2</del> | 3/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |
|   | 4/0 | 0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3   |
|   | 14  | 8 | 13 | 22 | 35 | 62 | 83 | 137 |
|   | 12  | 5 | 9  | 16 | 25 | 45 | 60 | 100 |
|   | 10  | 3 | 6  | 10 | 16 | 28 | 38 | 63  |
|   | 8   | 1 | 3  | 6  | 9  | 16 | 22 | 36  |
|   | 6   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 6  | 12 | 16 | 26  |
| <del>THHN, THWN, THWN 2</del>                       | 4   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 7  | 9  | 16  |
|   | 3   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 13  |
|   | 2   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 11  |
|   | 1   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 4  | 5  | 8   |
|   | 1/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7   |

|                   |                   |     |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|                   | 2/0               | 0   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6  |
|                   | 3/0               | 0   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
|                   | 4/0               | 0   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
| XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2 | 14                | 5   | 9 | 15 | 24 | 43 | 58 | 96 |
|                   | 12                | 4   | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 44 | 74 |
|                   | 10                | 3   | 5 | 9  | 14 | 24 | 33 | 55 |
|                   | 8                 | 1   | 3 | 5  | 8  | 13 | 18 | 30 |
|                   | 6                 | 1   | 1 | 3  | 5  | 10 | 13 | 22 |
|                   | 4                 | 1   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 7  | 10 | 16 |
|                   | 3                 | 1   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 14 |
|                   | 2                 | 1   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 11 |
|                   | 1                 | 0   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 4  | 5  | 8  |
|                   | XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2 | 1/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  |
| 2/0               |                   | 0   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6  |
| 3/0               |                   | 0   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
| 4/0               |                   | 0   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

TABLE E3904.6(7) (Annex C, Table C.7)

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN LIQUID-TIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (LFMC)<sup>a</sup>

| TYPE LETTERS | CONDUCTOR SIZE | TRADE SIZES (inches) |
|--------------|----------------|----------------------|
|--------------|----------------|----------------------|

|   | AWG/kcmil | 1/2 | 3/4 | 1  | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2  |
|---|-----------|-----|-----|----|-------|-------|----|
|   | 14        | 4   | 7   | 12 | 21    | 27    | 44 |
|   | 12        | 3   | 6   | 10 | 17    | 22    | 36 |
|   | 10        | 3   | 5   | 8  | 14    | 18    | 29 |
|   | 8         | 1   | 2   | 4  | 7     | 9     | 15 |
|   | 6         | 1   | 1   | 3  | 6     | 7     | 12 |
|   | 4         | 1   | 1   | 2  | 4     | 6     | 9  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2   | 3         | 1   | 1   | 1  | 4     | 5     | 8  |
|   | 2         | 1   | 1   | 1  | 3     | 4     | 7  |
|   | 1         | 0   | 1   | 1  | 1     | 3     | 5  |
|   | 1/0       | 0   | 1   | 1  | 1     | 2     | 4  |
|   | 2/0       | 0   | 1   | 1  | 1     | 1     | 3  |
|   | 3/0       | 0   | 0   | 1  | 1     | 1     | 3  |
|   | 4/0       | 0   | 0   | 1  | 1     | 1     | 2  |
|   | 14        | 9   | 15  | 25 | 44    | 57    | 93 |
|   | 12        | 7   | 12  | 19 | 33    | 43    | 71 |
| TW, THHW, THW, THW-2  | 10        | 5   | 9   | 14 | 25    | 32    | 53 |
|   | 8         | 3   | 5   | 8  | 14    | 18    | 29 |
|   | 14        | 6   | 10  | 16 | 29    | 38    | 62 |
| RHH <sub>3</sub> , RHW <sub>3</sub> , RHW-2 <sub>3</sub> , THHW, THW, THW-2 | 12        | 5   | 8   | 13 | 23    | 30    | 50 |

|   |                |               |               |               |               |               |                |
|---|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
|   | <del>10</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>10</del> | <del>18</del> | <del>22</del> | <del>30</del>  |
|   | <del>8</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>11</del> | <del>14</del> | <del>23</del> |                |
|   | <del>6</del>   | <del>3</del>  | <del>5</del>  | <del>8</del>  | <del>11</del> | <del>18</del> |                |
|   | <del>4</del>   | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>8</del>  | <del>13</del> |                |
|   | <del>3</del>   | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>5</del>  | <del>7</del>  | <del>11</del> |                |
|   | <del>2</del>   | <del>1</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>9</del>  |                |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a, TW, THW, THHW,<br>THW 2 | <del>1</del>   | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>7</del>  |                |
|   | <del>1/0</del> | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>6</del>  |                |
|   | <del>2/0</del> | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>5</del>  |                |
|   | <del>3/0</del> | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>4</del>  |                |
|   | <del>4/0</del> | <del>0</del>  | <del>0</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  |                |
|   | <del>14</del>  | <del>13</del> | <del>22</del> | <del>36</del> | <del>63</del> | <del>81</del> | <del>133</del> |
|   | <del>12</del>  | <del>9</del>  | <del>16</del> | <del>26</del> | <del>46</del> | <del>59</del> | <del>97</del>  |
|   | <del>10</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>10</del> | <del>16</del> | <del>29</del> | <del>37</del> | <del>61</del>  |
|   | <del>8</del>   | <del>3</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>9</del>  | <del>16</del> | <del>21</del> | <del>35</del>  |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2                          | <del>6</del>   | <del>2</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>7</del>  | <del>12</del> | <del>15</del> | <del>25</del>  |
|   | <del>4</del>   | <del>1</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>7</del>  | <del>9</del>  | <del>15</del>  |
|   | <del>3</del>   | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>8</del>  | <del>13</del>  |
|   | <del>2</del>   | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>5</del>  | <del>7</del>  | <del>11</del>  |
|   | <del>1</del>   | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>5</del>  | <del>8</del>  |                |

|                      |     |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|----------------------|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|
|                      | 1/0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 7  |
|                      | 2/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6  |
|                      | 3/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
|                      | 4/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
| XXXX, XXXHW, XXXHW 2 | 14  | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 57 | 93 |
|                      | 12  | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 43 | 71 |
|                      | 10  | 5 | 9  | 14 | 25 | 32 | 53 |
|                      | 8   | 3 | 5  | 8  | 14 | 18 | 30 |
|                      | 6   | 1 | 3  | 6  | 10 | 13 | 22 |
|                      | 4   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 7  | 9  | 16 |
|                      | 3   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 13 |
|                      | 2   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 11 |
| XXXX, XXXHW, XXXHW 2 | 1   | 1 | 1  | 1  | 4  | 5  | 8  |
|                      | 1/0 | 1 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
|                      | 2/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6  |
|                      | 3/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
|                      | 4/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW 2 without outer covering.

TABLE E3904.6(8) (Annex C, Table C.8)

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN RIGID METAL CONDUIT (RMC)<sup>a</sup>

| TYPE LETTERS         | CONDUCTOR SIZE<br>AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) |     |    |       |       |    |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----|----|-------|-------|----|
|                      |                             | 1/2                  | 3/4 | 1  | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2      | 14                          | 4                    | 7   | 12 | 21    | 28    | 46 |
|                      | 12                          | 3                    | 6   | 10 | 17    | 23    | 38 |
|                      | 10                          | 3                    | 5   | 8  | 14    | 19    | 31 |
|                      | 8                           | 1                    | 2   | 4  | 7     | 10    | 16 |
|                      | 6                           | 1                    | 1   | 3  | 6     | 8     | 13 |
|                      | 4                           | 1                    | 1   | 2  | 4     | 6     | 10 |
|                      | 3                           | 1                    | 1   | 2  | 4     | 5     | 9  |
|                      | 2                           | 1                    | 1   | 1  | 3     | 4     | 7  |
|                      | 1                           | 0                    | 1   | 1  | 1     | 3     | 5  |
|                      | 1/0                         | 0                    | 1   | 1  | 1     | 2     | 4  |
|                      | 2/0                         | 0                    | 1   | 1  | 1     | 2     | 4  |
|                      | 3/0                         | 0                    | 0   | 1  | 1     | 1     | 3  |
|                      | 4/0                         | 0                    | 0   | 1  | 1     | 1     | 3  |
| TW, THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14                          | 9                    | 15  | 25 | 44    | 59    | 98 |
|                      | 12                          | 7                    | 12  | 19 | 33    | 45    | 75 |
|                      | 10                          | 5                    | 9   | 14 | 25    | 34    | 56 |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW-2a   | 8                           | 3                    | 5   | 8  | 14    | 19    | 31 |
|                      | 14                          | 6                    | 10  | 17 | 29    | 39    | 65 |

|   |                |               |               |               |               |               |                |
|---|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
|   | <del>12</del>  | <del>5</del>  | <del>8</del>  | <del>13</del> | <del>23</del> | <del>32</del> | <del>52</del>  |
|   | <del>10</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>10</del> | <del>18</del> | <del>25</del> | <del>41</del>  |
|   | <del>8</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>11</del> | <del>15</del> | <del>24</del> |                |
|   | <del>6</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>5</del>  | <del>8</del>  | <del>11</del> | <del>18</del>  |
|   | <del>4</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>8</del>  | <del>14</del>  |
|   | <del>3</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>5</del>  | <del>7</del>  | <del>12</del>  |
|   | <del>2</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>10</del>  |
| RHH3, RHW3, RHW 23, TW, THW, THHW,<br>THW 2 | <del>1</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>7</del>   |
|   | <del>1/0</del> | <del>0</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>6</del>   |
|   | <del>2/0</del> | <del>0</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>5</del>   |
|   | <del>3/0</del> | <del>0</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>4</del>   |
|   | <del>4/0</del> | <del>0</del>  | <del>0</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>   |
|   | <del>14</del>  | <del>13</del> | <del>22</del> | <del>36</del> | <del>63</del> | <del>85</del> | <del>140</del> |
|   | <del>12</del>  | <del>9</del>  | <del>16</del> | <del>26</del> | <del>46</del> | <del>62</del> | <del>102</del> |
|   | <del>10</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>10</del> | <del>17</del> | <del>29</del> | <del>39</del> | <del>64</del>  |
|   | <del>8</del>   | <del>3</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>9</del>  | <del>16</del> | <del>22</del> | <del>37</del>  |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2                          | <del>6</del>   | <del>2</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>7</del>  | <del>12</del> | <del>16</del> | <del>27</del>  |
|   | <del>4</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>2</del>  | <del>4</del>  | <del>7</del>  | <del>10</del> | <del>16</del>  |
|   | <del>3</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>6</del>  | <del>8</del>  | <del>14</del>  |
|   | <del>2</del>   | <del>4</del>  | <del>1</del>  | <del>3</del>  | <del>5</del>  | <del>7</del>  | <del>11</del>  |

|                    |     |   |    |    |    |    |    |
|--------------------|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2 | 4   | 4 | 4  | 4  | 5  | 8  |    |
|                    | 4/0 | 4 | 4  | 4  | 4  | 7  |    |
|                    | 2/0 | 0 | 4  | 4  | 2  | 6  |    |
|                    | 3/0 | 0 | 4  | 4  | 3  | 5  |    |
|                    | 4/0 | 0 | 4  | 4  | 4  | 4  |    |
|                    | 14  | 9 | 15 | 25 | 44 | 59 | 98 |
|                    | 12  | 7 | 12 | 19 | 33 | 45 | 75 |
|                    | 10  | 5 | 9  | 14 | 25 | 34 | 56 |
|                    | 8   | 4 | 5  | 8  | 14 | 19 | 31 |
|                    | 6   | 4 | 3  | 6  | 10 | 14 | 23 |
| XHH, XHHW, XHHW 2  | 4   | 4 | 2  | 4  | 7  | 10 | 16 |
|                    | 3   | 4 | 4  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 14 |
|                    | 2   | 4 | 4  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 12 |
|                    | 1   | 4 | 4  | 4  | 4  | 5  | 9  |
|                    | 1/0 | 4 | 4  | 4  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
|                    | 2/0 | 0 | 4  | 4  | 2  | 3  | 6  |
|                    | 3/0 | 0 | 4  | 4  | 4  | 3  | 5  |
|                    | 4/0 | 0 | 4  | 4  | 4  | 2  | 4  |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW 2 without outer covering.

TABLE E3904.6(9) (Annex C, Table C.9)

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN RIGID PVC CONDUIT, SCHEDULE 80 (PVC 80)a

| TYPE LETTERS         | CONDUCTOR SIZE<br>AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) |     |    |       |       |    |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----|----|-------|-------|----|
|                      |                             | 1/2                  | 3/4 | 1  | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2      | 14                          | 3                    | 5   | 9  | 17    | 23    | 39 |
|                      | 12                          | 2                    | 4   | 7  | 14    | 19    | 32 |
|                      | 10                          | 1                    | 3   | 6  | 11    | 15    | 26 |
|                      | 8                           | 1                    | 1   | 3  | 6     | 8     | 13 |
|                      | 6                           | 1                    | 1   | 2  | 4     | 6     | 11 |
|                      | 4                           | 1                    | 1   | 1  | 3     | 5     | 8  |
|                      | 3                           | 0                    | 1   | 1  | 3     | 4     | 7  |
|                      | 2                           | 0                    | 1   | 1  | 3     | 4     | 6  |
|                      | 1                           | 0                    | 1   | 1  | 1     | 2     | 4  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2      | 1/0                         | 0                    | 0   | 1  | 1     | 1     | 3  |
|                      | 2/0                         | 0                    | 0   | 1  | 1     | 1     | 3  |
|                      | 3/0                         | 0                    | 0   | 1  | 1     | 1     | 3  |
|                      | 4/0                         | 0                    | 0   | 0  | 1     | 1     | 2  |
| TW, THHW, THW, THW-2 | 14                          | 6                    | 11  | 20 | 35    | 49    | 82 |
|                      | 12                          | 5                    | 9   | 15 | 27    | 38    | 63 |
|                      | 10                          | 3                    | 6   | 11 | 20    | 28    | 47 |
|                      | 8                           | 1                    | 3   | 6  | 11    | 15    | 26 |

|  |     |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|--|-----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|  | 14  | 4  | 8  | 13 | 23 | 32 | 55  |
|  | 12  | 3  | 6  | 10 | 19 | 26 | 44  |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a                       | 10  | 12 | 5  | 8  | 15 | 20 | 34  |
|  | 8   | 4  | 3  | 5  | 9  | 12 | 20  |
|  | 6   | 4  | 1  | 3  | 7  | 9  | 16  |
|  | 4   | 4  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 12  |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a, TW, THW, THHW, THW 2 | 3   | 4  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 10  |
|  | 2   | 4  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 8   |
|  | 1   | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6   |
|  | 1/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5   |
|  | 2/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |
| RHHa, RHWa, RHW 2a, TW, THW, THHW, THW 2 | 3/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3   |
|  | 4/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3   |
|  | 14  | 9  | 17 | 28 | 51 | 70 | 118 |
|  | 12  | 6  | 12 | 20 | 37 | 51 | 86  |
|  | 10  | 4  | 7  | 13 | 23 | 32 | 54  |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2                       | 8   | 2  | 4  | 7  | 13 | 18 | 31  |
|  | 6   | 4  | 3  | 5  | 9  | 13 | 22  |
|  | 4   | 4  | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 14  |
|  | 3   | 4  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 12  |

|                   |     |   |    |    |    |    |
|-------------------|-----|---|----|----|----|----|
|                   | 2   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 6  | 10 |
|                   | 1   | 0 | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7  |
|                   | 1/0 | 0 | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6  |
|                   | 2/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  |
|                   | 3/0 | 0 | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  |
|                   | 4/0 | 0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 3  |
|                   | 14  | 6 | 11 | 20 | 35 | 49 |
|                   | 12  | 5 | 9  | 15 | 27 | 38 |
| XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2 | 10  | 3 | 6  | 11 | 20 | 28 |
|                   | 8   | 1 | 3  | 6  | 11 | 15 |
|                   | 6   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 8  | 11 |
|                   | 14  | 6 | 11 | 20 | 35 | 49 |
|                   | 12  | 5 | 9  | 15 | 27 | 38 |
|                   | 10  | 3 | 6  | 11 | 20 | 28 |
|                   | 8   | 1 | 3  | 6  | 11 | 15 |
| XHH, XHHW, XHHW-2 | 6   | 1 | 2  | 4  | 8  | 11 |
|                   | 4   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  |
|                   | 3   | 1 | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  |
|                   | 2   | 1 | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  |
|                   | 1   | 0 | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  |

|     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |
| 4/0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.

TABLE E3904.6(10) (Annex C, Table C.10)

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN RIGID PVC CONDUIT SCHEDULE 40 (PVC 40)<sup>a</sup>

| TYPE LETTERS    | CONDUCTOR SIZE<br>AWG/kcmil | TRADE SIZES (inches) |     |    |       |       |    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-----|----|-------|-------|----|
|                 |                             | 1/2                  | 3/4 | 1  | 1 1/4 | 1 1/2 | 2  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2 | 14                          | 4                    | 7   | 11 | 20    | 27    | 45 |
|                 | 12                          | 3                    | 5   | 9  | 16    | 22    | 37 |
|                 | 10                          | 2                    | 4   | 7  | 13    | 18    | 30 |
|                 | 8                           | 1                    | 2   | 4  | 7     | 9     | 15 |
|                 | 6                           | 1                    | 1   | 3  | 5     | 7     | 12 |
|                 | 4                           | 1                    | 1   | 2  | 4     | 6     | 10 |
|                 | 3                           | 1                    | 1   | 1  | 4     | 5     | 8  |
|                 | 2                           | 1                    | 1   | 1  | 3     | 4     | 7  |
| RHH, RHW, RHW-2 | 1                           | 0                    | 1   | 1  | 1     | 3     | 5  |
|                 | 1/0                         | 0                    | 1   | 1  | 1     | 2     | 4  |
|                 | 2/0                         | 0                    | 0   | 1  | 1     | 1     | 3  |

|   |     |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|---|-----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
|   | 3/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3   |
|   | 4/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2   |
|   | 14  | 8  | 14 | 24 | 42 | 57 | 94  |
| TW, THHW, THW, THW 2                        | 12  | 6  | 11 | 18 | 32 | 44 | 72  |
|   | 10  | 4  | 8  | 13 | 24 | 32 | 54  |
|   | 8   | 2  | 4  | 7  | 13 | 18 | 30  |
|   | 14  | 5  | 9  | 16 | 28 | 38 | 63  |
| RHH3, RHW3, RHW 2a                          | 12  | 4  | 8  | 13 | 22 | 30 | 50  |
|   | 10  | 3  | 6  | 10 | 17 | 24 | 39  |
|   | 8   | 1  | 3  | 6  | 10 | 14 | 23  |
|   | 6   | 1  | 2  | 4  | 8  | 11 | 18  |
|   | 4   | 1  | 1  | 3  | 6  | 8  | 13  |
|   | 3   | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5  | 7  | 11  |
|   | 2   | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4  | 6  | 10  |
| RHH3, RHW3, RHW 2a, TW, THW, THHW,<br>THW 2 | 1   | 0  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 4  | 7   |
|   | 1/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 6   |
|   | 2/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3  | 5   |
|   | 3/0 | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 2  | 4   |
|   | 4/0 | 0  | 0  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 3   |
| THHN, THWN, THWN 2                          | 14  | 11 | 21 | 34 | 60 | 82 | 135 |



|     |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1   | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 5 | 8 |
| 1/0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 4 | 7 |
| 2/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 3 | 6 |
| 3/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 5 |
| 4/0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

~~a. Types RHW, and RHW-2 without outer covering.~~

~~E3904.7 Air handling stud cavity and joist spaces.~~

~~Where wiring methods having a nonmetallic covering pass through stud cavities and joist spaces used for air handling, such wiring shall pass through such spaces perpendicular to the long dimension of the spaces. [300.22(C) Exception]~~

~~SECTION E3905~~

~~BOXES, CONDUIT BODIES AND FITTINGS~~

~~E3905.1 Box, conduit body or fitting—where required.~~

~~A box or conduit body shall be installed at each conductor splice point, outlet, switch point, junction point and pull point except as otherwise permitted in Sections E3905.1.1 through E3905.1.6.~~

~~Fittings and connectors shall be used only with the specific wiring methods for which they are designed and listed. (300.15)~~

~~E3905.1.1 Equipment.~~

~~An integral junction box or wiring compartment that is part of listed equipment shall be permitted to serve as a box or conduit body. [300.15(B)]~~

~~E3905.1.2 Protection.~~

~~A box or conduit body shall not be required where cables enter or exit from conduit or tubing that is used to provide cable support or protection against physical damage. A fitting shall be provided on the end(s) of the conduit or tubing to protect the cable from abrasion. [300.15(C)]~~

~~E3905.1.3 Integral enclosure.~~

~~A wiring device with integral enclosure identified for the use, having brackets that securely fasten the device to walls or ceilings of conventional on-site frame construction, for use with nonmetallic sheathed cable, shall be permitted in lieu of a box or conduit body. [300.15(E)]~~

~~E3905.1.4 Fitting.~~

~~A fitting identified for the use shall be permitted in lieu of a box or conduit body where such fitting is accessible after installation and does not contain spliced or terminated conductors. [300.15(F)]~~

~~E3905.1.5 Buried conductors.~~

~~Splices and taps in buried conductors and cables shall not be required to be enclosed in a box or conduit body where installed in accordance with Section E3803.4.~~

~~E3905.1.6 Luminaires.~~

~~Where a luminaire is listed to be used as a raceway, a box or conduit body shall not be required for wiring installed therein. [300.15(J)]~~

~~E3905.2 Metal boxes.~~

~~Metal boxes shall be grounded. (314.4)~~

~~E3905.3 Nonmetallic boxes.~~

~~Nonmetallic boxes shall be used only with cabled wiring methods with entirely nonmetallic sheaths, flexible cords and nonmetallic raceways. (314.3)~~

~~Exceptions:~~

~~1. Where internal bonding means are provided between all entries, nonmetallic boxes shall be permitted to be used with metal raceways and metal armored cables. (314.3 Exception No. 1)~~

~~2. Where integral bonding means with a provision for attaching an equipment grounding jumper inside the box are provided between all threaded entries in nonmetallic boxes listed for the purpose, nonmetallic boxes shall be permitted to be used with metal raceways and metal armored cables. (314.3 Exception No. 2)~~

~~E3905.3.1 Nonmetallic sheathed cable and nonmetallic boxes.~~

~~Where nonmetallic sheathed cable is used, the cable assembly, including the sheath, shall extend into the box not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) through a nonmetallic sheathed cable knockout opening. (314.7(C))~~

~~E3905.3.2 Securing to box.~~

~~Wiring methods shall be secured to the boxes. [314.17(C)]~~

~~Exception: Where nonmetallic sheathed cable is used with boxes not larger than a nominal size of 2 1/4 inches by 4 inches (57 mm by 102 mm) mounted in walls or ceilings, and where the cable is fastened within 8 inches (203 mm) of the box measured along the sheath, and where the sheath extends through a cable knockout not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), securing the cable to the box shall not be required. [314.17(C) Exception]~~

~~E3905.3.3 Conductor rating.~~

~~Nonmetallic boxes shall be suitable for the lowest temperature rated conductor entering the box. [314.17(C)]~~

~~E3905.4 Minimum depth of boxes for outlets, devices, and utilization equipment.~~

~~Outlet and device boxes shall have an approved depth to allow equipment installed within them to be mounted properly and without the likelihood of damage to conductors within the box. (314.24)~~

~~E3905.4.1 Outlet boxes without enclosed devices or utilization equipment.~~

~~Outlet boxes that do not enclose devices or utilization equipment shall have an internal depth of not less than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm). [314.24(A)]~~

~~E3905.4.2 Utilization equipment.~~

~~Outlet and device boxes that enclose devices or utilization equipment shall have a minimum internal depth that accommodates the rearward projection of the equipment and the size of the conductors that supply the equipment. The internal depth shall include that of any extension boxes, plaster rings, or raised covers. The internal depth shall comply with all of the applicable provisions that follow. [314.24(B)]~~

~~Exception: Utilization equipment that is listed to be installed with specified boxes.~~

~~1. Large equipment. Boxes that enclose devices or utilization equipment that projects more than 17/8 inches (48 mm) rearward from the mounting plane of the box shall have a depth that is not less than the depth of the equipment plus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). [314.24(B)(1)]~~

~~2. Conductors larger than 4 AWG. Boxes that enclose devices or utilization equipment supplied by conductors larger than 4 AWG shall be identified for their specific function. [314.24(B)(2)]~~

~~3. Conductors 8, 6, or 4 AWG. Boxes that enclose devices or utilization equipment supplied by 8, 6, or 4 AWG conductors shall have an internal depth that is not less than 21/16 inches (52.4 mm). [314.24(B)(3)]~~

~~4. Conductors 12 or 10 AWG. Boxes that enclose devices or utilization equipment supplied by 12 or 10 AWG conductors shall have an internal depth that is not less than 13/16 inches (30.2 mm). Where the equipment projects rearward from the mounting plane of the box by more than 1 inch (25.4 mm), the box shall have a depth that is not less than that of the equipment plus 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). [314.24(B)(4)]~~

~~5. Conductors 14 AWG and smaller. Boxes that enclose devices or utilization equipment supplied by 14 AWG or smaller conductors shall have a depth that is not less than 15/16 inch (23.8 mm). [314.24(B)(5)]~~

~~E3905.5 Boxes enclosing flush-mounted devices.~~

~~Boxes enclosing flush-mounted devices shall be of such design that the devices are completely enclosed at the back and all sides and shall provide support for the devices. Screws for supporting the box shall not be used for attachment of the device contained therein. (314.19)~~

~~E3905.6 Boxes at luminaire outlets.~~

~~Outlet boxes used at luminaire or lampholder outlets shall be designed for the support of luminaires and lampholders and shall be installed as required by Section E3904.3. [314.27(A)]~~

~~E3905.6.1 Vertical surface outlets.~~

~~Boxes used at luminaire or lampholder outlets in or on a vertical surface shall be identified and marked on the interior of the box to indicate the maximum weight of the luminaire or lamp holder that is permitted to be supported by the box if other than 50 pounds (22.7 kg). [314.27(A)(1)]~~

~~Exception: A vertically mounted luminaire or lampholder weighing not more than 6 pounds (2.7 kg) shall be permitted to be supported on other boxes or plaster rings that are secured to other boxes, provided that the luminaire or its supporting yoke is secured to the box with not fewer than two No. 6 or larger screws. [314.27(A)(1) Exception]~~

~~E3905.6.2 Ceiling outlets.~~

~~For outlets used exclusively for lighting, the box shall be designed or installed so that a luminaire or lampholder can be attached. Such boxes shall be capable of supporting a luminaire weighing up to 50 pounds (22.7 kg). A luminaire that weighs more than 50 pounds (22.7 kg) shall be supported independently of the outlet box, unless the outlet box is listed and marked on the interior of the box to indicate the maximum weight that the box is permitted to support. [314.27(A)(2)]~~

~~E3905.7 Floor boxes.~~

~~Where outlet boxes for receptacles are installed in the floor, such boxes shall be listed specifically for that application. [314.27(B)]~~

~~E3905.8 Boxes at fan outlets.~~

~~Outlet boxes and outlet box systems used as the sole support of ceiling-suspended fans (paddle) shall be marked by their manufacturer as suitable for this purpose and shall not support ceiling-suspended fans (paddle) that weigh more than 70 pounds (31.8 kg). For outlet boxes and outlet box systems designed to support ceiling-suspended fans (paddle) that weigh more than 35 pounds (15.9 kg), the required marking shall include the maximum weight to be supported.~~

~~Where spare, separately switched, ungrounded conductors are provided to a ceiling-mounted outlet box and such box is in a location acceptable for a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan, the outlet box or outlet box system shall be listed for sole support of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan. [314.27(C)]~~

#### ~~E3905.9 Utilization equipment.~~

~~Boxes used for the support of utilization equipment other than ceiling-suspended (paddle) fans shall meet the requirements of Sections E3905.6.1 and E3905.6.2 for the support of a luminaire that is the same size and weight. [314.27(D)]~~

~~Exception: Utilization equipment weighing not more than 6 pounds (2.7 kg) shall be permitted to be supported on other boxes or plaster rings that are secured to other boxes, provided that the equipment or its supporting yoke is secured to the box with not fewer than two No. 6 or larger screws. [314.27(D) Exception]~~

#### ~~E3905.10 Conduit bodies and junction, pull and outlet boxes to be accessible.~~

~~Conduit bodies and junction, pull and outlet boxes shall be installed so that the wiring therein can be accessed without removing any part of the building or structure or, in underground circuits, without excavating sidewalks, paving, earth or other substance used to establish the finished grade. (314.29)~~

~~Exception: Boxes covered by gravel, light aggregate or noncohesive granulated soil shall be listed for the application, and the box locations shall be effectively identified and access shall be provided for excavation. (314.29 Exception)~~

#### ~~E3905.11 Damp or wet locations.~~

~~In damp or wet locations, boxes, conduit bodies and fittings shall be placed or equipped so as to prevent moisture from entering or accumulating within the box, conduit body or fitting. Boxes, conduit bodies and fittings installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations. Where drainage openings are installed in the field in boxes or conduit bodies listed for use in damp or wet locations, such openings shall be approved and not larger than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). For listed drain fittings, larger openings are permitted where installed in the field in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. (314.15)~~

#### ~~E3905.12 Number of conductors in outlet, device, and junction boxes, and conduit bodies.~~

~~Boxes and conduit bodies shall be of an approved size to provide free space for all enclosed conductors. In no case shall the volume of the box, as calculated in Section E3905.12.1, be less than the box fill calculation as calculated in Section E3905.12.2. The minimum volume for conduit bodies shall be as calculated in Section E3905.12.3. The provisions of this section shall not apply to terminal housings supplied with motors or generators. (314.16)~~

##### ~~E3905.12.1 Box volume calculations.~~

~~The volume of a wiring enclosure (box) shall be the total volume of the assembled sections, and, where used, the space provided by plaster rings, domed covers, extension rings, etc., that are marked with~~

their volume in cubic inches or are made from boxes the dimensions of which are listed in Table E3905.12.1. [314.16(A)]

TABLE E3905.12.1 [Table 314.16(A)]

MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS IN METAL BOXES<sup>a</sup>

| BOX DIMENSIONS (inches<br>trade size and type) | MAXIMUM CAPACITY<br>(cubic inches) | MAXIMUM NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS <sup>a</sup> |           |           |           |           |          |          |
|--|------------------------------------|---|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|----------|----------|
|  |                                    | 18<br>Awg                                 | 16<br>Awg | 14<br>Awg | 12<br>Awg | 10<br>Awg | 8<br>Awg | 6<br>Awg |
| 4 × 1 1/4 round or octagonal                   | 12.5                               | 8   | 7         | 6         | 5         | 5         | 4        | 2        |
| 4 × 1 1/2 round or octagonal                   | 15.5                               | 10  | 8         | 7         | 6         | 6         | 5        | 3        |
| 4 × 2 1/8 round or octagonal                   | 21.5                               | 14  | 12        | 10        | 9         | 8         | 7        | 4        |
| 4 × 1 1/4 square                               | 18.0                               | 12  | 10        | 9         | 8         | 7         | 6        | 3        |
| 4 × 1 1/2 square                               | 21.0                               | 14  | 12        | 10        | 9         | 8         | 7        | 4        |
| 4 × 2 1/8 square                               | 30.3                               | 20  | 17        | 15        | 13        | 12        | 10       | 6        |
| 4 11/16 × 1 1/4 square                         | 25.5                               | 17  | 14        | 12        | 11        | 10        | 8        | 5        |
| 4 11/16 × 1 1/2 square                         | 29.5                               | 19  | 16        | 14        | 13        | 11        | 9        | 5        |
| 4 11/16 × 2 1/8 square                         | 42.0                               | 28  | 24        | 21        | 18        | 16        | 14       | 8        |
| 3 × 2 × 1 1/2 device                           | 7.5                                | 5   | 4         | 3         | 3         | 3         | 2        | 1        |
| 3 × 2 × 2 device                               | 10.0                               | 6   | 5         | 5         | 4         | 4         | 3        | 2        |
| 3 × 2 × 2 1/4 device                           | 10.5                               | 7   | 6         | 5         | 4         | 4         | 3        | 2        |
| 3 × 2 × 2 1/2 device                           | 12.5                               | 8   | 7         | 6         | 5         | 5         | 4        | 2        |
| 3 × 2 × 2 3/4 device                           | 14.0                               | 9   | 8         | 7         | 6         | 5         | 4        | 2        |
| 3 × 2 × 3 1/2 device                           | 18.0                               | 12  | 10        | 9         | 8         | 7         | 6        | 3        |

|                                     |      |    |    |    |   |   |   |   |
|-------------------------------------|------|----|----|----|---|---|---|---|
| 4 × 21/8 × 11/2 device              | 10.3 | 6  | 5  | 5  | 4 | 4 | 3 | 2 |
| 4 × 21/8 × 17/8 device              | 13.0 | 8  | 7  | 6  | 5 | 5 | 4 | 2 |
| 4 × 21/8 × 21/8 device              | 14.5 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6 | 5 | 4 | 2 |
| 33/4 × 2 × 21/2 masonry<br>box/gang | 14.0 | 9  | 8  | 7  | 6 | 5 | 4 | 2 |
| 33/4 × 2 × 31/2 masonry<br>box/gang | 21.0 | 14 | 12 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 4 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 cubic inch = 16.4 cm<sup>3</sup>.

a. Where volume allowances are not required by Sections E3905.12.2.2 through E3905.12.2.5.

#### ~~E3905.12.1.1 Standard boxes.~~

The volumes of standard boxes that are not marked with a cubic inch capacity shall be as given in Table E3905.12.1. ~~[314.16(A)(1)]~~

#### ~~E3905.12.1.2 Other boxes.~~

~~Boxes 100 cubic inches (1640 cm<sup>3</sup>) or less, other than those described in Table E3905.12.1, and nonmetallic boxes shall be durably and legibly marked by the manufacturer with their cubic inch capacity. Boxes described in Table E3905.12.1 that have a larger cubic inch capacity than is designated in the table shall be permitted to have their cubic inch capacity marked as required by this section. ~~[314.16(A)(2)]~~~~

#### ~~E3905.12.2 Box fill calculations.~~

~~The volumes in Section E3905.12.2.1 through Section E3905.12.2.5, as applicable, shall be added together. No allowance shall be required for small fittings such as locknuts and bushings. ~~[314.16(B)]~~~~

#### ~~E3905.12.2.1 Conductor fill.~~

~~Each conductor that originates outside the box and terminates or is spliced within the box shall be counted once, and each conductor that passes through the box without splice or termination shall be counted once. Each loop or coil of unbroken conductor having a length equal to or greater than twice that required for free conductors by Section E3406.11.3, shall be counted twice. The conductor fill, in cubic inches, shall be computed using Table E3905.12.2.1. A conductor, no part of which leaves the box, shall not be counted. ~~[314.16(B)(1)]~~~~

~~Exception: An equipment grounding conductor or not more than four fixture wires smaller than No. 14, or both, shall be permitted to be omitted from the calculations where such conductors enter a box from a domed fixture or similar canopy and terminate within that box. [314.16(B)(1) Exception]~~

~~TABLE E3905.12.2.1 [Table 314.16(B)]~~

~~VOLUME ALLOWANCE REQUIRED PER CONDUCTOR~~

| <del>SIZE OF CONDUCTOR</del> | <del>FREE SPACE WITHIN BOX FOR EACH CONDUCTOR (cubic inches)</del> |
|------------------------------|--|
| <del>18 AWG</del>            | <del>1.50</del>  |
| <del>16 AWG</del>            | <del>1.75</del>  |
| <del>14 AWG</del>            | <del>2.00</del>  |
| <del>12 AWG</del>            | <del>2.25</del>  |
| <del>10 AWG</del>            | <del>2.50</del>  |
| <del>8 AWG</del>             | <del>3.00</del>  |
| <del>6 AWG</del>             | <del>5.00</del>  |

~~For SI: 1 cubic inch = 16.4 cm<sup>3</sup>.~~

~~E3905.12.2.2 Clamp fill.~~

~~Where one or more internal cable clamps, whether factory or field supplied, are present in the box, a single volume allowance in accordance with Table E3905.12.2.1 shall be made based on the largest conductor present in the box. An allowance shall not be required for a cable connector having its clamping mechanism outside of the box. A clamp assembly that incorporates a cable termination for the cable conductors shall be listed and marked for use with specific nonmetallic boxes. Conductors that originate within the clamp assembly shall be included in conductor fill calculations provided in Section E3905.12.2.1 as though they entered from outside of the box. The clamp assembly shall not require a fill allowance, but, the volume of the portion of the assembly that remains within the box after installation shall be excluded from the box volume as marked in accordance with Section E3905.12.1.2.~~

~~[314.16(B)(2)]~~

~~E3905.12.2.3 Support fittings fill.~~

~~Where one or more fixture studs or hickies are present in the box, a single volume allowance in accordance with Table E3905.12.2.1 shall be made for each type of fitting based on the largest conductor present in the box. [314.16(B)(3)]~~

~~E3905.12.2.4 Device or equipment fill.~~

~~For each yoke or strap containing one or more devices or equipment, a double volume allowance in accordance with Table E3905.12.2.1 shall be made for each yoke or strap based on the largest conductor connected to a device(s) or equipment supported by that yoke or strap. For a device or utilization equipment that is wider than a single 2 inch (51 mm) device box as described in Table E3905.12.1, a double volume allowance shall be made for each ganged portion required for mounting of the device or equipment. [314.16(B)(4)]~~

~~E3905.12.2.5 Equipment grounding conductor fill.~~

~~Where one or more equipment grounding conductors or equipment bonding jumpers enters a box, a single volume allowance in accordance with Table E3905.12.2.1 shall be made based on the largest equipment grounding conductor or equipment bonding jumper present in the box. [314.16(B)(5)]~~

~~E3905.12.3 Conduit bodies.~~

~~Conduit bodies enclosing 6 AWG conductors or smaller, other than short radius conduit bodies, shall have a cross-sectional area not less than twice the cross-sectional area of the largest conduit or tubing to which they can be attached. The maximum number of conductors permitted shall be the maximum number permitted by Section E3904.6 for the conduit to which it is attached. [314.16(C)(1)]~~

~~E3905.12.3.1 Splices, taps or devices.~~

~~Only those conduit bodies that are durably and legibly marked by the manufacturer with their cubic inch capacity shall be permitted to contain splices, taps or devices. The maximum number of conductors shall be calculated using the same procedure for similar conductors in other than standard boxes. [314.16(C)(2)]~~

~~E3905.12.3.2 Short radius conduit bodies.~~

~~Conduit bodies such as capped elbows and service entrance elbows that enclose conductors 6 AWG or smaller and that are only intended to enable the installation of the raceway and the contained conductors, shall not contain splices, taps, or devices and shall be of sufficient size to provide free space for all conductors enclosed in the conduit body. [314.16(C)(3)]~~

~~SECTION E3906~~~~INSTALLATION OF BOXES,  
CONDUIT BODIES AND FITTINGS~~~~E3906.1 Conductors entering boxes, conduit bodies or fittings.~~

~~Conductors entering boxes, conduit bodies or fittings shall be protected from abrasion. (314.17)~~

~~E3906.1.1 Insulated fittings.~~

~~Where raceways contain 4 AWG or larger insulated circuit conductors and these conductors enter a cabinet, box enclosure, or raceway, the conductors shall be protected by an identified fitting providing a smoothly rounded insulating surface, unless the conductors are separated from the fitting or raceway by identified insulating material securely fastened in place. [300.4(G)]~~

~~Exception: Where threaded hubs or bosses that are an integral part of a cabinet, box enclosure, or raceway provide a smoothly rounded or flared entry for conductors. [300.4(G) Exception]~~

~~Conduit bushings constructed wholly of insulating material shall not be used to secure a fitting or raceway. The insulating fitting or insulating material shall have a temperature rating not less than the insulation temperature rating of the installed conductors. [330.4(G)]~~

#### ~~E3906.2 Openings.~~

~~Openings through which conductors enter shall be closed in an approved manner. [314.17(A)]~~

#### ~~E3906.3 Metal boxes and conduit bodies.~~

~~Where raceway or cable is installed with metal boxes, or conduit bodies, the raceway or cable shall be secured to such boxes and conduit bodies. [314.17(B)]~~

#### ~~E3906.4 Unused openings.~~

~~Unused openings other than those intended for the operation of equipment, those intended for mounting purposes, or those permitted as part of the design for listed equipment, shall be closed to afford protection substantially equivalent to that of the wall of the equipment. Metal plugs or plates used with nonmetallic boxes or conduit bodies shall be recessed at least 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from the outer surface of the box or conduit body. [110.12(A)]~~

#### ~~E3906.5 In wall or ceiling.~~

~~In walls or ceilings of concrete, tile or other noncombustible material, boxes employing a flush type cover or faceplate shall be installed so that the front edge of the box, plaster ring, extension ring, or listed extender will not be set back from the finished surface more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). In walls and ceilings constructed of wood or other combustible material, boxes, plaster rings, extension rings and listed extenders shall be flush with the finished surface or project therefrom. (314.20)~~

#### ~~E3906.6 Noncombustible surfaces.~~

~~Openings in noncombustible surfaces that accommodate boxes employing a flush type cover or faceplate shall be made so that there are no gaps or open spaces greater than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) around the edge of the box. (314.21)~~

#### ~~E3906.7 Surface extensions.~~

~~Surface extensions shall be made by mounting and mechanically securing an extension ring over the box. (314.22)~~

~~Exception: A surface extension shall be permitted to be made from the cover of a flush-mounted box where the cover is designed so it is unlikely to fall off, or be removed if its securing means becomes loose. The wiring method shall be flexible for an approved length that permits removal of the cover and provides access to the box interior and shall be arranged so that any bonding or grounding continuity is independent of the connection between the box and cover. (314.22 Exception)~~

#### ~~E3906.8 Supports.~~

~~Boxes and enclosures shall be supported in accordance with one or more of the provisions in Sections E3906.8.1 through E3906.8.6. (314.23)~~

#### ~~E3906.8.1 Surface mounting.~~

~~An enclosure mounted on a building or other surface shall be rigidly and securely fastened in place. If the surface does not provide rigid and secure support, additional support in accordance with other provisions of Section E3906.8 shall be provided. [314.23(A)]~~

#### ~~E3906.8.2 Structural mounting.~~

~~An enclosure supported from a structural member or from grade shall be rigidly supported either directly, or by using a metal, polymeric or wood brace. [314.23(B)]~~

#### ~~E3906.8.2.1 Nails and screws.~~

~~Nails and screws, where used as a fastening means, shall be attached by using brackets on the outside of the enclosure, or they shall pass through the interior within 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) of the back or ends of the enclosure. Screws shall not be permitted to pass through the box except where exposed threads in the box are protected by an approved means to avoid abrasion of conductor insulation. [314.23(B)(1)]~~

#### ~~E3906.8.2.2 Braces.~~

~~Metal braces shall be protected against corrosion and formed from metal that is not less than 0.020 inch (0.508 mm) thick uncoated. Wood braces shall have a cross section not less than nominal 1 inch by 2 inches (25.4 mm by 51 mm). Wood braces in wet locations shall be treated for the conditions. Polymeric braces shall be identified as being suitable for the use. [314.23(B)(2)]~~

#### ~~E3906.8.3 Mounting in finished surfaces.~~

~~An enclosure mounted in a finished surface shall be rigidly secured there to by clamps, anchors, or fittings identified for the application. [314.23(C)]~~

#### ~~E3906.8.4 Raceway supported enclosures without devices or fixtures.~~

~~An enclosure that does not contain a device(s), other than splicing devices, or support a luminaire, lampholder or other equipment, and that is supported by entering raceways shall not exceed 100 cubic inches (1640 cm<sup>3</sup>) in size. The enclosure shall have threaded entries or identified hubs. The enclosure shall be supported by two or more conduits threaded wrenchtight into the enclosure or hubs. Each~~

conduit shall be secured within 3 feet (914 mm) of the enclosure, or within 18 inches (457 mm) of the enclosure if all entries are on the same side of the enclosure. [314.23(E)]

Exception: Rigid metal, intermediate metal, or rigid polyvinyl chloride nonmetallic conduit or electrical metallic tubing shall be permitted to support a conduit body of any size, provided that the conduit body is not larger in trade size than the largest trade size of the supporting conduit or electrical metallic tubing. [314.23(E) Exception]

~~E3906.8.5 Raceway supported enclosures, with devices or luminaire.~~

~~An enclosure that contains a device(s), other than splicing devices, or supports a luminaire, lampholder or other equipment and is supported by entering raceways shall not exceed 100 cubic inches (1640 cm<sup>3</sup>) in size. The enclosure shall have threaded entries or identified hubs. The enclosure shall be supported by two or more conduits threaded wrench tight into the enclosure or hubs. Each conduit shall be secured within 18 inches (457 mm) of the enclosure. [314.23(F)]~~

~~Exceptions:~~

~~1. Rigid metal or intermediate metal conduit shall be permitted to support a conduit body of any size, provided that the conduit bodies are not larger in trade size than the largest trade size of the supporting conduit. [314.23(F) Exception No. 1]~~

~~2. An unbroken length(s) of rigid or intermediate metal conduit shall be permitted to support a box used for luminaire or lampholder support, or to support a wiring enclosure that is an integral part of a luminaire and used in lieu of a box in accordance with Section E3905.1.1, where all of the following conditions are met:~~

~~2.1. The conduit is securely fastened at a point so that the length of conduit beyond the last point of conduit support does not exceed 3 feet (914 mm).~~

~~2.2. The unbroken conduit length before the last point of conduit support is 12 inches (305 mm) or greater, and that portion of the conduit is securely fastened at some point not less than 12 inches (305 mm) from its last point of support.~~

~~2.3. Where accessible to unqualified persons, the luminaire or lampholder, measured to its lowest point, is not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) above grade or standing area and at least 3 feet (914 mm) measured horizontally to the 8 foot (2438 mm) elevation from windows, doors, porches, fire escapes, or similar locations.~~

~~2.4. A luminaire supported by a single conduit does not exceed 12 inches (305 mm) in any direction from the point of conduit entry.~~

~~2.5. The weight supported by any single conduit does not exceed 20 pounds (9.1 kg).~~

~~2.6. At the luminaire or lampholder end, the conduit(s) is threaded wrenchtight into the box, conduit body, or integral wiring enclosure, or into hubs identified for the purpose. Where a box or conduit body~~

is used for support, the luminaire shall be secured directly to the box or conduit body, or through a threaded conduit nipple not over 3 inches (76 mm) long. [314.23(F) Exception No. 2]

#### E3906.8.6 Enclosures in concrete or masonry.

An enclosure supported by embedment shall be identified as being suitably protected from corrosion and shall be securely embedded in concrete or masonry. [314.23(G)]

#### E3906.9 Covers and canopies.

Outlet boxes shall be effectively closed with a cover, faceplate or fixture canopy. Screws used for the purpose of attaching covers, or other equipment to the box shall be either machine screws matching the thread gauge or size that is integral to the box or shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. (314.25)

#### E3906.10 Covers and plates.

Covers and plates shall be nonmetallic or metal. Metal covers and plates shall be grounded. [314.25(A)]

#### E3906.11 Exposed combustible finish.

Combustible wall or ceiling finish exposed between the edge of a fixture canopy or pan and the outlet box shall be covered with noncombustible material where required by Section E4004.2. [314.25(B)]

### SECTION E3907

#### CABINETS AND PANELBOARDS

##### E3907.1 Switch and overcurrent device enclosures with splices, taps, and feed through conductors.

Where the wiring space of enclosures for switches or overcurrent devices contains conductors that are feeding through, spliced, or tapping off to other enclosures, switches, or overcurrent devices, all of the following conditions shall apply:

1. The total area of all conductors installed at any cross section of the wiring space shall not exceed 40 percent of the cross sectional area of that space.
2. The total area of all conductors, splices, and taps installed at any cross section of the wiring space shall not exceed 75 percent of the cross sectional area of that space.
3. A warning label shall be applied to the enclosure that identifies the closest disconnecting means for any feed through conductors. (312.8)

##### E3907.2 Damp and wet locations.

In damp or wet locations, cabinets and panelboards of the surface type shall be placed or equipped so as to prevent moisture or water from entering and accumulating within the cabinet, and shall be mounted to provide an air space not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) between the enclosure and the wall or

~~other supporting surface. Cabinets installed in wet locations shall be weatherproof. For enclosures in wet locations, raceways and cables entering above the level of uninsulated live parts shall be installed with fittings listed for wet locations. (312.2)~~

~~Exception: Nonmetallic enclosures installed on concrete, masonry, tile, or similar surfaces shall not be required to be installed with an air space between the enclosure and the wall or supporting surface. (312.2 Exception)~~

#### ~~E3907.3 Position in wall.~~

~~In walls of concrete, tile or other noncombustible material, cabinets and panelboards shall be installed so that the front edge of the cabinet will not set back of the finished surface more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm). In walls constructed of wood or other combustible material, cabinets shall be flush with the finished surface or shall project there from. (312.3)~~

#### ~~E3907.4 Repairing noncombustible surfaces.~~

~~Noncombustible surfaces that are broken or incomplete shall be repaired so that there will not be gaps or open spaces greater than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at the edge of the cabinet or cutout box employing a flush type cover. (312.4)~~

#### ~~E3907.5 Unused openings.~~

~~Unused openings, other than those intended for the operation of equipment, those intended for mounting purposes, and those permitted as part of the design for listed equipment, shall be closed to afford protection substantially equivalent to that of the wall of the equipment. Metal plugs and plates used with nonmetallic cabinets shall be recessed at least 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) from the outer surface. Unused openings for circuit breakers and switches shall be closed using identified closures, or other approved means that provide protection substantially equivalent to the wall of the enclosure. (110.12(A))~~

#### ~~E3907.6 Conductors entering cabinets.~~

~~Conductors entering cabinets and panelboards shall be protected from abrasion and shall comply with Section E3906.1.1. (312.5)~~

#### ~~E3907.7 Openings to be closed.~~

~~Openings through which conductors enter cabinets, panelboards and meter sockets shall be closed in an approved manner. [312.5(A)]~~

#### ~~E3907.8 Cables.~~

~~Where cables are used, each cable shall be secured to the cabinet, panelboard, cutout box, or meter socket enclosure. [312.5(C)]~~

~~Exception: Cables with entirely nonmetallic sheaths shall be permitted to enter the top of a surface-mounted enclosure through one or more sections of rigid raceway not less than 18 inches (457 mm) nor more than 10 feet (3048 mm) in length, provided all the following conditions are met:~~

- ~~1. Each cable is fastened within 12 inches (305 mm), measured along the sheath, of the outer end of the raceway.~~
- ~~2. The raceway extends directly above the enclosure and does not penetrate a structural ceiling.~~
- ~~3. A fitting is provided on each end of the raceway to protect the cable(s) from abrasion and the fittings remain accessible after installation.~~
- ~~4. The raceway is sealed or plugged at the outer end using approved means so as to prevent access to the enclosure through the raceway.~~
- ~~5. The cable sheath is continuous through the raceway and extends into the enclosure beyond the fitting not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).~~
- ~~6. The raceway is fastened at its outer end and at other points in accordance with Section E3802.1.~~
- ~~7. The allowable cable fill shall not exceed that permitted by Table E3907.8. A multiconductor cable having two or more conductors shall be treated as a single conductor for calculating the percentage of conduit fill area. For cables that have elliptical cross sections, the cross-sectional area calculation shall be based on the major diameter of the ellipse as a circle diameter. [312.5(C) Exception]~~

TABLE E3907.8 (Chapter 9, Table 1)

PERCENT OF CROSS SECTION OF CONDUIT AND TUBING FOR CONDUCTORS

| NUMBER OF CONDUCTORS | MAXIMUM PERCENT OF CONDUIT AND TUBING AREA FILLED BY CONDUCTORS |
|----------------------|---|
| 1                    | 53  |
| 2                    | 31  |
| Over 2               | 40  |

~~E3907.9 Wire bending space within an enclosure containing a panelboard.~~

~~Wire bending space within an enclosure containing a panelboard shall comply with the requirements of Sections E3907.9.1 through E3907.9.3.~~

~~E3907.9.1 Top and bottom wire bending space.~~

The top and bottom wire bending space for a panelboard enclosure shall be sized in accordance with Table E3907.9.1(1) based on the largest conductor entering or leaving the enclosure. [408.55 (A)]

Exceptions:

1. For a panelboard rated at 225 amperes or less and designed to contain not more than 42 overcurrent devices, either the top or bottom wire bending space shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with Table E3907.9.1(2). For the purposes of this exception, a 2-pole or a 3-pole circuit breaker shall be considered as two or three overcurrent devices, respectively. [408.55(A) Exception No. 1]

2. For any panelboard, either the top or bottom wire bending space shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with Table E3907.9.1(2) where the wire bending space on at least one side is sized in accordance with Table E3907.9.1(1) based on the largest conductor to be terminated in any side wire bending space. [408.55(A) Exception No. 2]

3. Where the panelboard is designed and constructed for wiring using only a single 90-degree bend for each conductor, including the grounded circuit conductor, and the wiring diagram indicates and specifies the method of wiring that must be used, the top and bottom wire bending space shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with Table E3907.9.1(2). [408.55(A) Exception No. 3]

4. Where there are no conductors terminated in that space, either the top or the bottom wire bending space, shall be permitted to be sized in accordance with Table E3907.9.1(2). [408.55(A) Exception No. 4]

TABLE E3907.9.1(1) [Table 312.6(B)]

MINIMUM WIRE BENDING SPACE AT TERMINALS (see note 1)

| WIRE SIZE (AWG or kcmil) |   | WIRES PER TERMINAL |               |        |    |
|--------------------------|---|--------------------|---------------|--------|----|
| All other conductors     | Compact stranded AA-8000 aluminum alloy conductors (see Note 3) | One (see note 2)   |               | Two    |    |
|                          |   | inches             | mm            | inches | mm |
| 14-10                    | 12-8  | Not specified      | Not specified | —      | —  |
| 8                        | 6   | 1 1/2              | 38.1          | —      | —  |
| 6                        | 4   | 2                  | 50.8          | —      | —  |
| 4                        | 2   | 3                  | 76.2          | —      | —  |

|     |         |         |       |         |       |
|-----|---------|---------|-------|---------|-------|
| 3/4 | 1       | 3       | 76.2  | —       | —     |
| 1/2 | 1/0     | 3 1/2   | 88.9  | —       | —     |
| 1/2 | 2/0     | 4 1/2   | 114   | —       | —     |
| 1/0 | 3/0     | 5 1/2   | 140   | 5 1/2   | 140   |
| 2/0 | 4/0     | 6       | 152   | 6       | 152   |
| 3/0 | 250     | 6 1/2 a | 165 a | 6 1/2 a | 165 a |
| 4/0 | 300     | 7 b     | 178 b | 7 1/2 e | 190 e |
| 250 | 350     | 8 1/2 d | 216 d | 8 1/2 d | 229 d |
| 300 | 400     | 10 e    | 254 e | 10 d    | 254 d |
| 350 | 500     | 12 e    | 305 e | 12 e    | 305 e |
| 400 | 600     | 13 e    | 330 e | 13 e    | 330 e |
| 500 | 700-750 | 14 e    | 356 e | 14 e    | 356 e |
| 600 | 800-900 | 15 e    | 381 e | 16 e    | 406 e |
| 700 | 1000    | 16 e    | 406 e | 18 e    | 457 e |

1. Bending space at terminals shall be measured in a straight line from the end of the lug or wire connector in a direction perpendicular to the enclosure wall.

2. For removable and lay in wire terminals intended for only one wire, bending space shall be permitted to be reduced by the following number of millimeters (inches):

a. 1/2 inches (12.7 mm)

b. 1 inches (25.4 mm)

c. 1 1/2 inches (38.1 mm)

d. 2 inches (50.8 mm)

3. This column shall be permitted to determine the required wire bending space for compact stranded aluminum conductors in sizes up to 1000 kcmil and manufactured using AA-8000 series electrical grade aluminum alloy conductor material.

TABLE E3907.9.1(2) [Table 312.6(A)]

MINIMUM WIRE BENDING SPACE AT TERMINALS AND MINIMUM WIDTH OF WIRING GUTTERS (see note 1)

| WIRE SIZE (AWG or kcmil) | WIRES PER TERMINAL |               |        |     |
|--------------------------|--------------------|---------------|--------|-----|
|                          | One                |               | Two    |     |
|                          | inches             | mm            | inches | mm  |
| 14-10                    | Not specified      | Not specified | —      | —   |
| 8-6                      | 1 1/2              | 38.1          | —      | —   |
| 4-3                      | 2                  | 50.8          | —      | —   |
| 2                        | 2 1/2              | 63.5          | —      | —   |
| 1                        | 2                  | 76.2          | —      | —   |
| 1/0-2/0                  | 3 1/2              | 88.9          | 5      | 127 |
| 3/0-4/0                  | 4                  | 102           | 6      | 152 |
| 250                      | 4 1/2              | 114           | 6      | 152 |
| 300-350                  | 5                  | 127           | 8      | 203 |
| 400-500                  | 6                  | 152           | 8      | 203 |
| 600-700                  | 8                  | 203           | 10     | 254 |

1. Bending space at terminals shall be measured in a straight line from the end of the lug or wire connector in the direction that the wire leaves the terminal to the wall, barrier, or obstruction.

E3907.9.2 Side wire bending space.

~~Side wire bending space shall be in accordance with Table E3907.9.1(2) based on the largest conductor to be terminated in that space. [408.55(B)]~~

~~E3907.9.3 Back wire bending space.~~

~~The distance between the center of the rear entry and the nearest termination for the entering conductors shall be not less than the distance given in Table E3907.9.1(1). Where a raceway or cable entry is in the wall of the enclosure, opposite a removable cover, the distance from that wall to the cover shall be permitted to comply with the distance required in Table E3907.9.1(2). [408.55 (C)]~~

## ~~SECTION E3908~~

### ~~GROUNDING~~

~~E3908.1 Metal enclosures.~~

~~Metal enclosures of conductors, devices and equipment shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor. (250.86)~~

~~Exceptions:~~

- ~~1. Short sections of metal enclosures or raceways used to provide cable assemblies with support or protection against physical damage. (250.86 Exception No. 2)~~
- ~~2. A metal elbow that is installed in an underground installation of rigid nonmetallic conduit and is isolated from possible contact by a minimum cover of 18 inches (457 mm) to any part of the elbow or that is encased in not less than 2 inches (51 mm) of concrete. (250.86 Exception No. 3)~~

~~E3908.2 Equipment fastened in place or connected by permanent wiring methods (fixed).~~

~~Exposed, normally noncurrent carrying metal parts of fixed equipment supplied by or enclosing conductors or components that are likely to become energized shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor where any of the following conditions apply:~~

- ~~1. Where within 8 feet (2438 mm) vertically or 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of earth or grounded metal objects and subject to contact by persons;~~
- ~~2. Where located in a wet or damp location and not isolated; or~~
- ~~3. Where in electrical contact with metal. (250.110)~~

~~E3908.3 Specific equipment fastened in place (fixed) or connected by permanent wiring methods.~~

~~Exposed, normally noncurrent carrying metal parts of the following equipment and enclosures shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor:~~

- ~~1. Luminaires as provided in Chapter 40. [250.112(J)]~~

~~2. Motor-operated water pumps, including submersible types. Where a submersible pump is used in a metal well casing, the well casing shall be connected to the pump circuit equipment grounding conductor. [250.112(L)]~~

~~E3908.4 Effective ground fault current path.~~

~~Electrical equipment and wiring and other electrically conductive material likely to become energized shall be installed in a manner that creates a low impedance circuit facilitating the operation of the overcurrent device or ground detector for high impedance grounded systems. Such circuit shall be capable of safely carrying the maximum ground fault current likely to be imposed on it from any point on the wiring system where a ground fault might occur to the electrical supply source. [250.(A)(5)]~~

~~E3908.5 Earth as a ground fault current path.~~

~~The earth shall not be considered as an effective ground fault current path. [250.4(A)(5)]~~

~~E3908.6 Load side grounded conductor neutral.~~

~~A grounded conductor shall not be connected to normally noncurrent carrying metal parts of equipment, to equipment grounding conductor(s), or be reconnected to ground on the load side of the service disconnecting means. [250.24(A)(5)]~~

~~E3908.7 Load side equipment.~~

~~A grounded circuit conductor shall not be used for grounding noncurrent carrying metal parts of equipment on the load side of the service disconnecting means. [250.142(B)]~~

~~E3908.8 Types of equipment grounding conductors.~~

~~The equipment grounding conductor run with or enclosing the circuit conductors shall be one or more or a combination of the following:~~

~~1. A copper, aluminum or copper clad conductor. This conductor shall be solid or stranded; insulated, covered or bare; and in the form of a wire or a busbar of any shape. [250.118(1)]~~

~~2. Rigid metal conduit. [250.118(2)]~~

~~3. Intermediate metal conduit. [250.118(3)]~~

~~4. Electrical metallic tubing. [250.118(4)]~~

~~5. Armor of Type AC cable in accordance with Section E3908.4. [250.118(8)]~~

~~6. Type MC cable that provides an effective ground fault current path in accordance with one or more of the following:~~

~~6.1. It contains an insulated or uninsulated equipment grounding conductor in compliance with Item 1 of this section.~~

~~6.2. The combined metallic sheath and uninsulated equipment grounding/bonding conductor of interlocked metal tape type MC cable that is listed and identified as an equipment grounding conductor.~~

~~6.3. The metallic sheath or the combined metallic sheath and equipment grounding conductors of the smooth or corrugated tube type MC cable that is listed and identified as an equipment grounding conductor. [250.118(10)]~~

~~7. Other electrically continuous metal raceways and auxiliary gutters. [250.118(13)]~~

~~8. Surface metal raceways listed for grounding. [250.118(14)]~~

#### ~~E3908.8.1 Flexible metal conduit.~~

~~Flexible metal conduit shall be permitted as an equipment grounding conductor where all of the following conditions are met:~~

~~1. The conduit is terminated in listed fittings.~~

~~2. The circuit conductors contained in the conduit are protected by overcurrent devices rated at 20 amperes or less.~~

~~3. The combined length of flexible metal conduit and flexible metallic tubing and liquid tight flexible metal conduit in the same ground return path does not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm).~~

~~If used to connect equipment where flexibility is necessary to minimize the transmission of vibration from equipment or to provide flexibility for equipment that requires movement after installation, an equipment grounding conductor shall be installed. [250.118(5)]~~

#### ~~E3908.8.2 Liquid tight flexible metal conduit.~~

~~Liquid tight flexible metal conduit shall be permitted as an equipment grounding conductor where all of the following conditions are met:~~

~~1. The conduit is terminated in listed fittings.~~

~~2. For trade sizes 3/8 through 1/2 (metric designator 12 through 16), the circuit conductors contained in the conduit are protected by overcurrent devices rated at 20 amperes or less.~~

~~3. For trade sizes 3/4 through 1 1/4 (metric designator 21 through 35), the circuit conductors contained in the conduit are protected by overcurrent devices rated at not more than 60 amperes and there is no flexible metal conduit, flexible metallic tubing, or liquid tight flexible metal conduit in trade sizes 3/8 inch or 1/2 inch (9.5 mm through 12.7 mm) in the ground fault current path.~~

~~4. The combined length of flexible metal conduit and flexible metallic tubing and liquid tight flexible metal conduit in the same ground return path does not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm).~~

If used to connect equipment where flexibility is necessary to minimize the transmission of vibration from equipment or to provide flexibility for equipment that requires movement after installation, an equipment grounding conductor shall be installed. [250.118(6)]

#### ~~E3908.8.3 Nonmetallic sheathed cable (Type NM).~~

In addition to the insulated conductors, the cable shall have an insulated, covered, or bare equipment grounding conductor. Equipment grounding conductors shall be sized in accordance with Table E3908.12. (334.108)

#### ~~E3908.9 Equipment fastened in place or connected by permanent wiring methods.~~

Noncurrent-carrying metal parts of equipment, raceways and other enclosures, where required to be grounded, shall be grounded by one of the following methods: (250.134)

1. By any of the equipment grounding conductors permitted by Sections E3908.8 through E3908.8.3. [250.134(A)]

2. By an equipment grounding conductor contained within the same raceway, cable or cord, or otherwise run with the circuit conductors. Equipment grounding conductors shall be identified in accordance with Section E3407.2. [250.134(B)]

#### ~~E3908.10 Methods of equipment grounding.~~

Fixtures and equipment shall be considered grounded where mechanically connected to an equipment grounding conductor as specified in Sections E3908.8 through E3908.8.3. Wire type equipment grounding conductors shall be sized in accordance with Section E3908.12. (250 Part VII)

#### ~~E3908.11 Equipment grounding conductor installation.~~

Where an equipment grounding conductor consists of a raceway, cable armor or cable sheath or where such conductor is a wire within a raceway or cable, it shall be installed in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and Chapters 34 and 38 using fittings for joints and terminations approved for installation with the type of raceway or cable used. All connections, joints and fittings shall be made tight using suitable tools. (250.120)

#### ~~E3908.12 Equipment grounding conductor size.~~

Copper, aluminum and copper clad aluminum equipment grounding conductors of the wire type shall be not smaller than shown in Table E3908.12, but they shall not be required to be larger than the circuit conductors supplying the equipment. Where a raceway or a cable armor or sheath is used as the equipment grounding conductor, as provided in Section E3908.8, it shall comply with Section E3908.4. Where ungrounded conductors are increased in size from the minimum size that has sufficient ampacity for the intended installation, wire type equipment grounding conductors shall be increased proportionally according to the circular mil area of the ungrounded conductors. [250.122(A) and (B)]

TABLE E3908.12 (Table 250.122)

## EQUIPMENT-GROUNDING CONDUCTOR SIZING

| RATING OR SETTING OF AUTOMATIC OVERCURRENT DEVICE IN CIRCUIT AHEAD OF EQUIPMENT, CONDUIT, ETC., NOT EXCEEDING THE FOLLOWING RATINGS (amperes) | MINIMUM SIZE          |   |
|---|-----------------------|---|
|   | Copper wire No. (AWG) | Aluminum or copper-clad aluminum wire No. (AWG) |
| 15  | 14                    | 12  |
| 20  | 12                    | 10  |
| 60  | 10                    | 8   |
| 100   | 8                     | 6   |
| 200   | 6                     | 4   |
| 300   | 4                     | 2   |
| 400   | 3                     | 1   |

~~E3908.12.1 Multiple circuits.~~

~~Where a single equipment grounding conductor is run with multiple circuits in the same raceway or cable, it shall be sized for the largest overcurrent device protecting conductors in the raceway or cable. [250.122(C)]~~

~~E3908.13 Continuity and attachment of equipment grounding conductors to boxes.~~

~~Where circuit conductors are spliced within a box or terminated on equipment within or supported by a box, any equipment grounding conductors associated with the circuit conductors shall be connected within the box or to the box with devices suitable for the use. Connections depending solely on solder shall not be used. Splices shall be made in accordance with Section E3406.10 except that insulation shall not be required. The arrangement of grounding connections shall be such that the disconnection or removal of a receptacle, luminaire or other device fed from the box will not interfere with or interrupt the grounding continuity. [250.146(A) and (C)]~~

~~E3908.14 Connecting receptacle grounding terminal to box.~~

An equipment bonding jumper, sized in accordance with Table E3908.12 based on the rating of the overcurrent device protecting the circuit conductors, shall be used to connect the grounding terminal of a grounding type receptacle to a grounded box except where grounded in accordance with one of the following: (250.146)

1. Surface mounted box. Where the box is mounted on the surface, direct metal to metal contact between the device yoke and the box shall be permitted to ground the receptacle to the box. At least one of the insulating washers shall be removed from receptacles that do not have a contact yoke or device designed and listed to be used in conjunction with the supporting screws to establish the grounding circuit between the device yoke and flush type boxes. This provision shall not apply to cover-mounted receptacles except where the box and cover combination are listed as providing satisfactory ground continuity between the box and the receptacle. A listed exposed work cover shall be considered to be the grounding and bonding means where the device is attached to the cover with at least two fasteners that are permanent, such as a rivet or have a thread locking or screw locking means and where the cover mounting holes are located on a flat non-raised portion of the cover. [250.146(A)]

2. Contact devices or yokes. Contact devices or yokes designed and listed for the purpose shall be permitted in conjunction with the supporting screws to establish equipment bonding between the device yoke and flush type boxes. [250.146(B)]

3. Floor boxes. The receptacle is installed in a floor box designed for and listed as providing satisfactory ground continuity between the box and the device. [250.146(C)]

#### ~~E3908.15 Metal boxes.~~

~~A connection shall be made between the one or more equipment grounding conductors and a metal box by means of a grounding screw that shall be used for no other purpose, equipment listed for grounding or by means of a listed grounding device. Where screws are used to connect grounding conductors or connection devices to boxes, such screws shall be one or more of the following: [250.148(C)]~~

~~1. Machine screw type fasteners that engage not less than two threads.~~

~~2. Machine screw type fasteners that are secured with a nut.~~

~~3. Thread forming machine screws that engage not less than two threads in the enclosure. [250.8(5) and (6)]~~

#### ~~E3908.16 Nonmetallic boxes.~~

~~One or more equipment grounding conductors brought into a nonmetallic outlet box shall be arranged to allow connection to fittings or devices installed in that box. [250.148(D)]~~

#### ~~E3908.17 Clean surfaces.~~

~~Nonconductive coatings such as paint, lacquer and enamel on equipment to be grounded shall be removed from threads and other contact surfaces to ensure electrical continuity or the equipment shall be connected by means of fittings designed so as to make such removal unnecessary. (250.12)~~

~~E3908.18 Bonding other enclosures.~~

~~Metal raceways, cable armor, cable sheath, enclosures, frames, fittings and other metal noncurrent-carrying parts that serve as equipment grounding conductors, with or without the use of supplementary equipment grounding conductors, shall be effectively bonded where necessary to ensure electrical continuity and the capacity to conduct safely any fault current likely to be imposed on them. Any nonconductive paint, enamel and similar coating shall be removed at threads, contact points and contact surfaces, or connections shall be made by means of fittings designed so as to make such removal unnecessary. [250.96(A)]~~

~~E3908.19 Size of equipment bonding jumper on load side of an overcurrent device.~~

~~The equipment bonding jumper on the load side of an overcurrent devices shall be sized, as a minimum, in accordance with Table E3908.12, but shall not be required to be larger than the circuit conductors supplying the equipment. An equipment bonding conductor shall be not smaller than No. 14 AWG.~~

~~A single common continuous equipment bonding jumper shall be permitted to connect two or more raceways or cables where the bonding jumper is sized in accordance with Table E3908.12 for the largest overcurrent device supplying circuits therein. [250.102(D) and 250.122]~~

~~E3908.20 Installation equipment bonding jumper.~~

~~Bonding jumpers or conductors and equipment bonding jumpers shall be installed either inside or outside of a raceway or an enclosure in accordance with Sections E3908.20.1 and E3908.20.2. [250.102(E)]~~

~~E3908.20.1 Inside raceway or enclosure.~~

~~Where installed inside a raceway or enclosure, equipment bonding jumpers and bonding jumpers or conductors shall comply with the requirements of Sections E3407.2 and E3908.13. [250.102(E)(1)]~~

~~E3908.20.2 Outside raceway or enclosure.~~

~~Where installed outside of a raceway or enclosure, the length of the bonding jumper or conductor or equipment bonding jumper shall not exceed 6 feet (1829 mm) and shall be routed with the raceway or enclosure. [250.102(E)(2)]~~

~~Equipment bonding jumpers and supply side bonding jumpers installed for bonding grounding electrodes and installed at outdoor pole locations for the purpose of bonding or grounding isolated sections of metal raceways or elbows installed in exposed risers of metal conduit or other metal raceway, shall not be limited in length and shall not be required to be routed with a raceway or enclosure. [250.102(E)(2) Exception]~~

~~E3908.20.3 Protection.~~

~~Bonding jumpers or conductors and equipment bonding jumpers shall be installed in accordance with Section E3610.2. [250.102(E)(3)]~~

~~SECTION E3909~~

~~FLEXIBLE CORDS~~

~~E3909.1 Where permitted.~~

~~Flexible cords shall be used only for the connection of appliances where the fastening means and mechanical connections of such appliances are designed to permit ready removal for maintenance, repair or frequent interchange and the appliance is listed for flexible cord connection. Flexible cords shall not be installed as a substitute for the fixed wiring of a structure; shall not be run through holes in walls, structural ceilings, suspended ceilings, dropped ceilings or floors; shall not be concealed behind walls, floors, ceilings or located above suspended or dropped ceilings. (400.7 and 400.8)~~

~~E3909.2 Loading and protection.~~

~~The ampere load of flexible cords serving fixed appliances shall be in accordance with Table E3909.2. This table shall be used in conjunction with applicable end use product standards to ensure selection of the proper size and type. Where flexible cord is approved for and used with a specific listed appliance, it shall be considered to be protected where applied within the appliance listing requirements. [240.4, 240.5(A), 240.5(B)(1), 400.5, and 400.13]~~

~~TABLE E3909.2 [Table 400.5(A)(1)]~~

~~MAXIMUM AMPERE LOAD FOR FLEXIBLE CORDS~~

| CORD SIZE<br>(AWG) | CORD TYPES S, SE, SEO, SJ, SJE, SJE0, SJO, SJO0, SJT, SJTO, SJTO0, SO, SOO, SRD, SRDE, SRDT, ST, STD, SV, SVO, SVO0, SVTO, SVTO0 |                                 |
|--------------------|--|---------------------------------|
|                    | Maximum ampere load  |                                 |
|                    | Three current carrying conductors  | Two current carrying conductors |
| <del>18</del>      | <del>7</del>   | <del>10</del>                   |
| <del>16</del>      | <del>10</del>  | <del>13</del>                   |
| <del>14</del>      | <del>15</del>  | <del>18</del>                   |
| <del>12</del>      | <del>20</del>  | <del>25</del>                   |

~~E3909.3 Splices.~~

~~Flexible cord shall be used only in continuous lengths without splices or taps. (400.9)~~

~~E3909.4 Attachment plugs.~~

~~Where used in accordance with Section E3909.1, each flexible cord shall be equipped with an attachment plug and shall be energized from a receptacle outlet. [400.7(B)]~~

## CHAPTER 40 DEVICES AND LUMINAIRES

### RESERVED

#### ~~SECTION~~4001

#### SWITCHES

~~E4001.1 Rating and application of snap switches.~~

~~General use snap switches shall be used within their ratings and shall control only the following loads:~~

- ~~1. 1. Resistive and inductive loads not exceeding the ampere rating of the switch at the voltage involved.~~
- ~~2. 2. Tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding the ampere rating of the switch at 120 volts.~~
- ~~3. 3. Motor loads not exceeding 80 percent of the ampere rating of the switch at its rated voltage. [404.14(A)]~~

~~E4001.2 CO/ALR snap switches.~~

~~Snap switches rated 20 amperes or less directly connected to aluminum conductors shall be marked CO/ALR. [404.14(C)]~~

~~E4001.3 Indicating.~~

~~General use and motor circuit switches and circuit breakers shall clearly indicate whether they are in the open OFF or closed ON position. Where single throw switches or circuit breaker handles are operated vertically rather than rotationally or horizontally, the up position of the handle shall be the closed (on) position.~~

~~E4001.4 Time switches and similar devices.~~

~~Time switches and similar devices shall be of the enclosed type or shall be mounted in cabinets or boxes or equipment enclosures. A barrier shall be used around energized parts to prevent operator exposure when making manual adjustments or switching. (404.5)~~

~~E4001.5 Grounding of enclosures.~~

~~Metal enclosures for switches or circuit breakers shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor. Metal enclosures for switches or circuit breakers used as service equipment shall comply with the provisions of Section E3609.4. Where nonmetallic enclosures are used with metal raceways or metal armored cables, provisions shall be made for connecting the equipment grounding conductor.~~

~~Nonmetallic boxes for switches shall be installed with a wiring method that provides or includes an equipment grounding conductor. [404.12]~~

~~E4001.6 Access.~~

~~Switches and circuit breakers used as switches shall be located to allow operation from a readily accessible location. Such devices shall be installed so that the center of the grip of the operating handle of the switch or circuit breaker, when in its highest position, will not be more than 6 feet 7 inches (2007 mm) above the floor or working platform. [404.8(A)]~~

~~**Exception:** This section shall not apply to switches and circuit breakers that are accessible by portable means and are installed adjacent to the motors, appliances and other equipment that they supply. [404.8(A) Exception]~~

~~E4001.7 Damp or wet locations.~~

~~A surface-mounted switch or circuit breaker located in a damp or wet location or outside of a building shall be enclosed in a weatherproof enclosure or cabinet. A flush-mounted switch or circuit breaker in a damp or wet location shall be equipped with a weatherproof cover. Switches shall not be installed within wet locations in tub or shower spaces unless installed as part of a listed tub or shower assembly. [404.8(A), (B), and (C)]~~

~~E4001.8 Grounded conductors.~~

~~Switches or circuit breakers shall not disconnect the grounded conductor of a circuit except where the switch or circuit breaker simultaneously disconnects all conductors of the circuit. [404.2(B)]~~

~~E4001.9 Switch connections.~~

~~Three- and four-way switches shall be wired so that all switching occurs only in the ungrounded circuit conductor. Color coding of switch connection conductors shall comply with Section E3407.3. Where in metal raceways or metal jacketed cables, wiring between switches and outlets shall be in accordance with Section E3406.7. [404.2(A)]~~

~~**Exception:** Switch loops do not require a grounded conductor. [404.2(A) Exception]~~

~~E4001.10 Box mounted.~~

~~Flush type snap switches mounted in boxes that are recessed from the finished wall surfaces as covered in Section E3906.5 shall be installed so that the extension plaster ears are seated against the surface of~~

~~the wall. Flush-type snap switches mounted in boxes that are flush with the finished wall surface or project therefrom shall be installed so that the mounting yoke or strap of the switch is seated against the box. Screws used for the purpose of attaching a snap switch to a box shall be of the type provided with a listed snap switch, or shall be machine screws having 32 threads per inch or part of listed assemblies or systems, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. [404.10(B)]~~

#### ~~E4001.11 Snap switch faceplates.~~

~~Faceplates provided for snap switches mounted in boxes and other enclosures shall be installed so as to completely cover the opening and, where the switch is flush mounted, seat against the finished surface. [404.9(A)]~~

#### ~~E4001.11.1 Faceplate grounding.~~

~~Snap switches, including dimmer and similar control switches, shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor and shall provide a means to connect metal faceplates to the equipment grounding conductor, whether or not a metal faceplate is installed. Snap switches shall be considered to be part of an effective ground-fault current path if either of the following conditions is met:~~

- ~~4. 1. The switch is mounted with metal screws to a metal box or metal cover that is connected to an equipment grounding conductor or to a nonmetallic box with integral means for connecting to an equipment grounding conductor.~~
- ~~5. 2. An equipment grounding conductor or equipment bonding jumper is connected to an equipment grounding termination of the snap switch. [404.9(B)]~~

#### **Exceptions:**

- ~~6. 1. Where a means to connect to an equipment grounding conductor does not exist within the snap switch enclosure or where the wiring method does not include or provide an equipment grounding conductor, a snap switch without a grounding connection to an equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted for replacement purposes only. A snap switch wired under the provisions of this exception and located within 8 feet (2438 mm) vertically or 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally of ground or exposed grounded metal objects, shall be provided with a faceplate of nonconducting noncombustible material with nonmetallic attachment screws, except where the switch mounting strap or yoke is nonmetallic or the circuit is protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter. [404.9(B) Exception No.1]~~
- ~~7. 2. Listed kits or listed assemblies shall not be required to be connected to an equipment grounding conductor if all of the following conditions apply:
 
  - ~~1. 2.1. The device is provided with a nonmetallic faceplate that cannot be installed on any other type of device.~~~~

~~2. 2.2. The device does not have mounting means to accept other configurations of faceplates.~~

~~3. 2.3. The device is equipped with a nonmetallic yoke.~~

~~4. 2.4. All parts of the device that are accessible after installation of the faceplate are manufactured of nonmetallic materials. [404.9(B) Exception No. 2]~~

~~8. 3. Connection to an equipment grounding conductor shall not be required for snap switches that have an integral nonmetallic enclosure complying with Section E3905.1.3. [404.9(B) Exception No. 3]~~

#### ~~E4001.12 Dimmer switches.~~

~~General use dimmer switches shall be used only to control permanently installed incandescent luminaires (lighting fixtures) except where listed for the control of other loads and installed accordingly. [404.14(E)]~~

#### ~~E4001.13 Multipole snap switches.~~

~~A multipole, general use snap switch shall not be fed from more than a single circuit unless it is listed and marked as a two circuit or three circuit switch. [404.8(C)]~~

#### ~~E4001.14 Cord and plug connected loads.~~

~~Where snap switches are used to control cord and plug connected equipment on a general purpose branch circuit, each snap switch controlling receptacle outlets or cord connectors that are supplied by permanently connected cord pendants shall be rated at not less than the rating of the maximum permitted ampere rating or setting of the overcurrent device protecting the receptacles or cord connectors, as provided in Sections E4002.1.1 and E4002.1.2. [404.14(F)]~~

#### ~~E4001.15 Switches controlling lighting loads.~~

~~The grounded circuit conductor for the controlled lighting circuit shall be provided at the location where switches control lighting loads that are supplied by a grounded general purpose branch circuit for other than the following:~~

~~9. 1. Where conductors enter the box enclosing the switch through a raceway, provided that the raceway is large enough for all contained conductors, including a grounded conductor.~~

~~10. 2. Where the box enclosing the switch is accessible for the installation of an additional or replacement cable without removing finish materials.~~

~~11. 3. Where snap switches with integral enclosures comply with E3905.1.3.~~

~~12. 4. Where the switch does not serve a habitable room or bathroom.~~

- ~~13. 5. Where multiple switch locations control the same lighting load such that the entire floor area of the room or space is visible from the single or combined switch locations.~~
- ~~14. 6. Where lighting in the area is controlled by automatic means.~~
- ~~15. 7. Where the switch controls a receptacle load. [404.2(C)]~~

**SECTION E4002****RECEPTACLES****E4002.1 Rating and type.**

~~Receptacles and cord connectors shall be rated at not less than 15 amperes, 125 volts, or 15 amperes, 250 volts, and shall not be a lampholder type. Receptacles shall be rated in accordance with this section. [406.3(B)]~~

**E4002.1.1 Single receptacle.**

~~A single receptacle installed on an individual branch circuit shall have an ampere rating not less than that of the branch circuit. [210.21(B)]~~

**E4002.1.2 Two or more receptacles.**

~~Where connected to a branch circuit supplying two or more receptacles or outlets, receptacles shall conform to the values listed in Table E4002.1.2. [210.21(B)(3)]~~

TABLE E4002.1.2 [Table 210.21(B)(3)]

**RECEPTACLE RATINGS FOR VARIOUS SIZE MULTI-OUTLET CIRCUITS**

| <b>CIRCUIT RATING (amperes)</b> | <b>RECEPTACLE RATING (amperes)</b> |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 15                              | 15                                 |
| 20                              | 15 or 20                           |
| 30                              | 30                                 |
| 40                              | 40 or 50                           |
| 50                              | 50                                 |

**E4002.2 Grounding type.**

~~Receptacles installed on 15- and 20-ampere-rated branch circuits shall be of the grounding type. [406.4(A)]~~

~~E4002.3~~CO/ALR receptacles.

~~Receptacles rated at 20 amperes or less and directly connected to aluminum conductors shall be marked CO/ALR. [406.3(C)]~~

~~E4002.4~~Faceplates.

~~Metal face plates shall be grounded. [406.6(B)]~~

~~E4002.5~~Position of receptacle faces.

~~After installation, receptacle faces shall be flush with or project from face plates of insulating material and shall project a minimum of 0.015 inch (0.381 mm) from metal face plates. Faceplates shall be installed so as to completely cover the opening and seat against the mounting surface. Receptacle faceplates mounted inside of a box having a recess mounted receptacle shall effectively close the opening and seat against the mounting surface. [406.5(D), 406.6]~~

~~**Exception:** Listed kits or assemblies encompassing receptacles and nonmetallic faceplates that cover the receptacle face, where the plate cannot be installed on any other receptacle, shall be permitted. [406.5(D) Exception]~~

~~E4002.6~~Receptacle mounted in boxes.

~~Receptacles mounted in boxes that are set back from the finished wall surface as permitted by Section E3906.5 shall be installed so that the mounting yoke or strap of the receptacle is held rigidly at the finished surface of the wall. Screws used for the purpose of attaching receptacles to a box shall be of the type provided with a listed receptacle, or shall be machine screws having 32 threads per inch or part of listed assemblies or systems, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Receptacles mounted in boxes that are flush with the wall surface or project therefrom shall be so installed that the mounting yoke or strap is seated against the box or raised cover. [406.5(A) and (B)]~~

~~E4002.7~~Receptacles mounted on covers.

~~Receptacles mounted to and supported by a cover shall be held rigidly against the cover by more than one screw or shall be a device assembly or box cover listed and identified for securing by a single screw. [406.5(C)]~~

~~E4002.8~~Damp locations.

~~A receptacle installed outdoors in a location protected from the weather or in other damp locations shall have an enclosure for the receptacle that is weatherproof when the receptacle cover(s) is closed and an attachment plug cap is not inserted. An installation suitable for wet locations shall also be considered suitable for damp locations. A receptacle shall be considered to be in a location protected from the weather where located under roofed open porches, canopies and similar structures and not subject to rain or water runoff. Fifteen and 20 ampere, 125 and 250 volt nonlocking receptacles installed in damp locations shall be listed a weather resistant type. [406.9(A)]~~

~~E4002.9 Fifteen and 20 ampere receptacles in wet locations.~~

~~Where installed in a wet location, 15 and 20 ampere, 125 and 250 volt receptacles shall have an enclosure that is weatherproof whether or not the attachment plug cap is inserted. An outlet box hood installed for this purpose shall be listed and identified as "extra duty." Fifteen and 20 ampere, 125 and 250 volt nonlocking receptacles installed in wet locations shall be a listed weather resistant type. [406.9(B)(1)]~~

~~E4002.10 Other receptacles in wet locations.~~

~~Where a receptacle other than a 15 or 20 amp, 125 or 250 volt receptacle is installed in a wet location and where the product intended to be plugged into it is not attended while in use, the receptacle shall have an enclosure that is weatherproof both when the attachment plug cap is inserted and when it is removed. Where such receptacle is installed in a wet location and where the product intended to be plugged into it will be attended while in use, the receptacle shall have an enclosure that is weatherproof when the attachment plug cap is removed. [406.9(B)(2)]~~

~~E4002.11 Bathtub and shower space.~~

~~A receptacle shall not be installed within or directly over a bathtub or shower stall. [406.9(C)]~~

~~E4002.12 Flush mounting with faceplate.~~

~~In damp or wet locations, the enclosure for a receptacle installed in an outlet box flush mounted in a finished surface shall be made weatherproof by means of a weatherproof faceplate assembly that provides a water tight connection between the plate and the finished surface. [406.9(E)]~~

~~E4002.13 Exposed terminals.~~

~~Receptacles shall be enclosed so that live wiring terminals are not exposed to contact. [406.5(G)]~~

~~E4002.14 Tamper resistant receptacles.~~

~~In areas specified in Section E3901.1, 125 volt, 15 and 20 ampere receptacles shall be listed tamper resistant receptacles. [406.12(A)]~~

~~**Exception:** Receptacles in the following locations shall not be required to be tamper resistant:~~

~~16. 1. Receptacles located more than 5.5 feet (1676 mm) above the floor.~~

~~17. 2. Receptacles that are part of a luminaire or appliance.~~

~~18. 3. A single receptacle for a single appliance or a duplex receptacle for two appliances where such receptacles are located in spaces dedicated for the appliances served and, under conditions of normal use, the appliances are not easily moved from one place to another. The appliances shall be cord and plug connected to such receptacles in accordance with Section E3909.4. [406.12(A) Exception]~~

~~E4002.15 Dimmer controlled receptacles.~~

~~A receptacle supplying lighting loads shall not be connected to a dimmer except where the plug and receptacle combination is a nonstandard configuration type that is specifically listed and identified for each such unique combination.~~

~~**SECTION E4003**~~

~~**LUMINAIRES**~~

~~E4003.1 Energized parts.~~

~~Luminaires, lampholders, and lamps shall not have energized parts normally exposed to contact. (410.5)~~

~~E4003.2 Luminaires near combustible material.~~

~~Luminaires shall be installed or equipped with shades or guards so that combustible material will not be subjected to temperatures in excess of 90°C (194°F). (410.11)~~

~~E4003.3 Exposed conductive parts.~~

~~The exposed metal parts of luminaires shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor or shall be insulated from the equipment grounding conductor and other conducting surfaces. Lamp tie wires, mounting screws, clips and decorative bands on glass spaced at least 1<sup>3</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (38 mm) from lamp terminals shall not be required to be grounded. (410.42)~~

~~E4003.4 Screw shell type.~~

~~Lampholders of the screw shell type shall be installed for use as lampholders only. (410.90)~~

~~E4003.5 Recessed incandescent luminaires.~~

~~Recessed incandescent luminaires shall have thermal protection and shall be listed as thermally protected. [410.115(C)]~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~19. 1. Thermal protection shall not be required in recessed luminaires listed for the purpose and installed in poured concrete. [410.115(C) Exception No.1]~~

~~20. 2. Thermal protection shall not be required in recessed luminaires having design, construction, and thermal performance characteristics equivalent to that of thermally protected luminaires, and such luminaires are identified as inherently protected. [410.115(C) Exception No. 2]~~

~~E4003.6 Thermal protection.~~

~~The ballast of a fluorescent luminaire installed indoors shall have integral thermal protection. Replacement ballasts shall also have thermal protection integral with the ballast. A simple reactance~~

~~ballast in a fluorescent luminaire with straight tubular lamps shall not be required to be thermally protected. [410.130(E)(1)]~~

~~E4003.7 High intensity discharge luminaires.~~

~~Recessed high intensity luminaires designed to be installed in wall or ceiling cavities shall have thermal protection and be identified as thermally protected. Thermal protection shall not be required in recessed high intensity luminaires having design, construction and thermal performance characteristics equivalent to that of thermally protected luminaires, and such luminaires are identified as inherently protected. Thermal protection shall not be required in recessed high intensity discharge luminaires installed in and identified for use in poured concrete. A recessed remote ballast for a high intensity discharge luminaire shall have thermal protection that is integral with the ballast and shall be identified as thermally protected. [110.130(F)(1), (2), (3), and (4)]~~

~~E4003.8 Metal halide lamp containment.~~

~~Luminaires that use a metal halide lamp other than a thick glass parabolic reflector lamp (PAR) shall be provided with a containment barrier that encloses the lamp, or shall be provided with a physical means that allows the use of only a lamp that is Type O. [(110.130(F)(5)]~~

~~E4003.9 Wet or damp locations.~~

~~Luminaires installed in wet or damp locations shall be installed so that water cannot enter or accumulate in wiring compartments, lampholders or other electrical parts. All luminaires installed in wet locations shall be marked SUITABLE FOR WET LOCATIONS. All luminaires installed in damp locations shall be marked SUITABLE FOR WET LOCATIONS or SUITABLE FOR DAMP LOCATIONS. (410.10)~~

~~E4003.10 Lampholders in wet or damp locations.~~

~~Lampholders installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations. Lampholders installed in damp locations shall be listed for damp locations or shall be listed for wet locations. (410.96)~~

~~E4003.11 Bathtub and shower areas.~~

~~Cord connected luminaires, chain , cable , or cord suspended luminaires, lighting track, pendants, and ceiling suspended (paddle) fans shall not have any parts located within a zone measured 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally and 8 feet (2438 mm) vertically from the top of a bathtub rim or shower stall threshold. This zone is all encompassing and includes the space directly over the tub or shower. Luminaires within the actual outside dimension of the bathtub or shower to a height of 8 feet (2438 mm) vertically from the top of the bathtub rim or shower threshold shall be marked for damp locations and where subject to shower spray, shall be marked for wet locations. [410.4(D)]~~

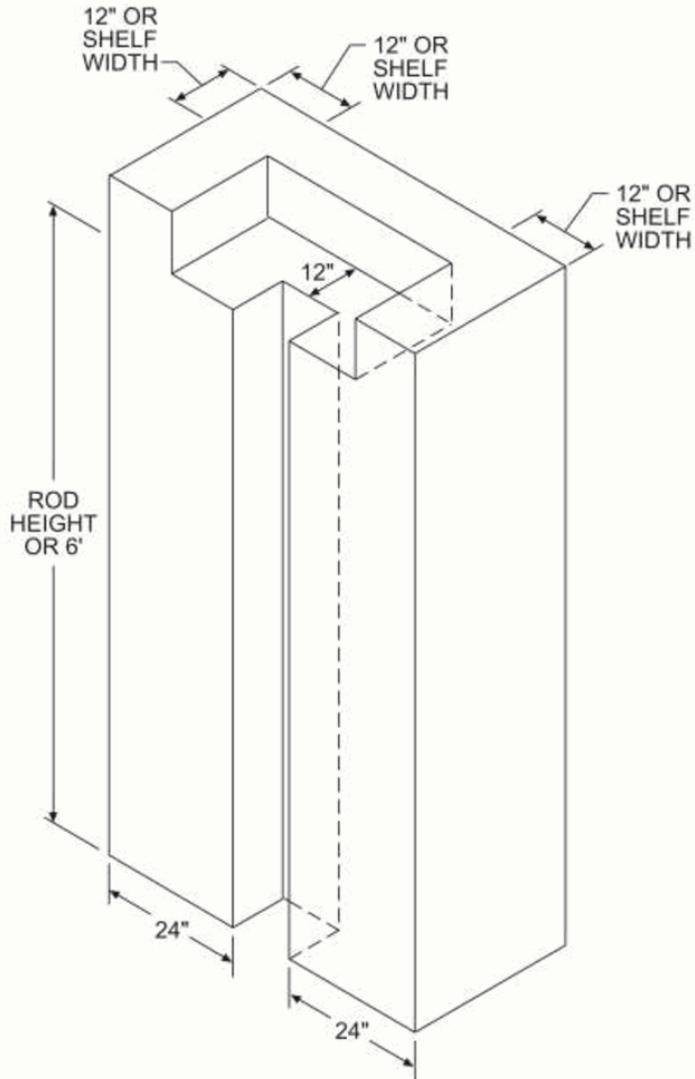
~~E4003.12 Luminaires in clothes closets.~~

~~For the purposes of this section, storage space shall be defined as a volume bounded by the sides and back closet walls and planes extending from the closet floor vertically to a height of 6 feet (1829 mm) or~~

~~the highest clothes hanging rod and parallel to the walls at a horizontal distance of 24 inches (610 mm) from the sides and back of the closet walls respectively, and continuing vertically to the closet ceiling parallel to the walls at a horizontal distance of 12 inches (305 mm) or the width of the shelf, whichever is greater. For a closet that permits access to both sides of a hanging rod, the storage space shall include the volume below the highest rod extending 12 inches (305 mm) on either side of the rod on a plane horizontal to the floor extending the entire length of the rod (see Figure E4003.12). (410.2)~~

~~The types of luminaires installed in clothes closets shall be limited to surface mounted or recessed incandescent or LED luminaires with completely enclosed light sources, surface mounted or recessed fluorescent luminaires, and surface mounted fluorescent or LED luminaires identified as suitable for installation within the closet storage area. Incandescent luminaires with open or partially enclosed lamps and pendant luminaires or lamp holders shall be prohibited. The minimum clearance between luminaires installed in clothes closets and the nearest point of a closet storage area shall be as follows: [410.16(A) and (B)]~~

- ~~21. 1. Surface mounted incandescent or LED luminaires with a completely enclosed light source shall be installed on the wall above the door or on the ceiling, provided that there is a minimum clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) between the fixture and the nearest point of a storage space.~~
- ~~22. 2. Surface mounted fluorescent luminaires shall be installed on the wall above the door or on the ceiling, provided that there is a minimum clearance of 6 inches (152 mm).~~
- ~~23. 3. Recessed incandescent luminaires or LED luminaires with a completely enclosed light source shall be installed in the wall or the ceiling provided that there is a minimum clearance of 6 inches (152 mm).~~
- ~~24. 4. Recessed fluorescent luminaires shall be installed in the wall or on the ceiling provided that there is a minimum clearance of 6 inches (152 mm) between the fixture and the nearest point of a storage space.~~
- ~~25. 5. Surface mounted fluorescent or LED luminaires shall be permitted to be installed within the closet storage space where identified for this use. [410.16(C)]~~



For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

FIGURE E4003.12

~~CLOSET STORAGE SPACE~~

~~E4003.13 Luminaire wiring—general.~~

~~Wiring on or within luminaires shall be neatly arranged and shall not be exposed to physical damage. Excess wiring shall be avoided. Conductors shall be arranged so that they are not subjected to temperatures above those for which the conductors are rated. (410.48)~~

~~E4003.13.1 Polarization of luminaires.~~

~~Luminaires shall be wired so that the screw shells of lampholders will be connected to the same luminaire or circuit conductor or terminal. The grounded conductor shall be connected to the screw shell.~~

~~E4003.13.2 Luminaires as raceways.~~

~~Luminaires shall not be used as raceways for circuit conductors except where such luminaires are listed and marked for use as a raceway or are identified for through wiring. Luminaires designed for end-to-end connection to form a continuous assembly, and luminaires connected together by recognized wiring methods, shall not be required to be listed as a raceway where they contain the conductors of one 2-wire branch circuit or one multiwire branch circuit and such conductors supply the connected luminaires. One additional 2-wire branch circuit that separately supplies one or more of the connected luminaires shall also be permitted. [410.64(A), (B), and (C)]~~

**SECTION E4004****LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION**~~E4004.1 Outlet box covers.~~

~~In a completed installation, each outlet box shall be provided with a cover except where covered by means of a luminaire canopy, lampholder or device with a faceplate. (410.22)~~

~~E4004.2 Combustible material at outlet boxes.~~

~~Combustible wall or ceiling finish exposed between the inside edge of a luminaire canopy or pan and the outlet box and having a surface area of 180 in.<sup>2</sup> (116 129 mm<sup>2</sup>) or more shall be covered with a noncombustible material. (410.23)~~

~~E4004.3 Access.~~

~~Luminaires shall be installed so that the connections between the luminaire conductors and the circuit conductors can be accessed without requiring the disconnection of any part of the wiring. Luminaires that are connected by attachment plugs and receptacles meet the requirement of this section. (410.8)~~

~~E4004.4 Supports.~~

~~Luminaires and lampholders shall be securely supported. A luminaire that weighs more than 6 pounds (2.72 kg) or exceeds 16 inches (406 mm) in any dimension shall not be supported by the screw shell of a lampholder. [410.30(A)]~~

~~E4004.5 Means of support.~~

~~Outlet boxes or fittings installed as required by Sections E3905 and E3906 shall be permitted to support luminaires. [410.36(A)]~~

~~E4004.6 Exposed components.~~

~~Luminaires having exposed ballasts, transformers, LED drivers or power supplies shall be installed so that such ballasts, transformers, LED drivers or power supplies are not in contact with combustible material unless listed for such condition. [410.136(A)]~~

~~E4004.7 Combustible low density cellulose fiberboard.~~

~~Where a surface mounted luminaire containing a ballast, transformer, LED driver or power supply is installed on combustible low density cellulose fiberboard, the luminaire shall be marked for this purpose or it shall be spaced not less than 1<sup>3</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inches (38 mm) from the surface of the fiberboard. Where such luminaires are partially or wholly recessed, the provisions of Sections E4004.8 and E4004.9 shall apply. [410.136(B)]~~

~~E4004.8 Recessed luminaire clearance.~~

~~A recessed luminaire that is not identified for contact with insulation shall have all recessed parts spaced at least <sup>3</sup>/<sub>2</sub> inch (12.7 mm) from combustible materials. The points of support and the finish trim parts at the opening in the ceiling, wall or other finished surface shall be permitted to be in contact with combustible materials. A recessed luminaire that is identified for contact with insulation, Type IC, shall be permitted to be in contact with combustible materials at recessed parts, points of support, and portions passing through the building structure and at finish trim parts at the opening in the ceiling or wall. [410.116(A)(1) and (A)(2)]~~

~~E4004.9 Recessed luminaire installation.~~

~~Thermal insulation shall not be installed above a recessed luminaire or within 3 inches (76 mm) of the recessed luminaire's enclosure, wiring compartment, ballast, transformer, LED driver or power supply except where such luminaire is identified for contact with insulation, Type IC. [410.116(B)]~~

**SECTION E4005****TRACK LIGHTING**~~E4005.1 Installation.~~

~~Lighting track shall be permanently installed and permanently connected to a branch circuit having a rating not more than that of the track. [410.151(A) and (B)]~~

~~E4005.2 Fittings.~~

~~Fittings identified for use on lighting track shall be designed specifically for the track on which they are to be installed. Fittings shall be securely fastened to the track, shall maintain polarization and connection to the equipment grounding conductor, and shall be designed to be suspended directly from the track. Only lighting track fittings shall be installed on lighting track. Lighting track fittings shall not be equipped with general purpose receptacles. [410.151(A) and (B)]~~

~~E4005.3 Connected load.~~

The connected load on lighting track shall not exceed the rating of the track. [410.151(B)]

~~E4005.4 Prohibited locations.~~

Lighting track shall not be installed in the following locations:

- ~~26. 1. Where likely to be subjected to physical damage.~~
- ~~27. 2. In wet or damp locations.~~
- ~~28. 3. Where subject to corrosive vapors.~~
- ~~29. 4. In storage battery rooms.~~
- ~~30. 5. In hazardous (classified) locations.~~
- ~~31. 6. Where concealed.~~
- ~~32. 7. Where extended through walls or partitions.~~
- ~~33. 8. Less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the finished floor except where protected from physical damage or the track operates at less than 30 volts rms open circuit voltage.~~
- ~~34. 9. Where prohibited by Section E4003.11. [410.151(C)]~~

~~E4005.5 Fastening.~~

Lighting track shall be securely mounted so that each fastening will be suitable for supporting the maximum weight of luminaires that can be installed. Except where identified for supports at greater intervals, a single section 4 feet (1219 mm) or shorter in length shall have two supports and, where installed in a continuous row, each individual section of not more than 4 feet (1219 mm) in length shall have one additional support. (410.154)

~~E4005.6 Grounding.~~

Lighting track shall be grounded in accordance with Chapter 39, and the track sections shall be securely coupled to maintain continuity of the circuitry, polarization and grounding throughout. [410.155(B)]

**CHAPTER 41  
APPLIANCE INSTALLATION**

RESERVED

~~**SECTION E4101**~~~~**GENERAL**~~~~E4101.1 Scope.~~

~~This section covers installation requirements for appliances and fixed heating equipment. (422.1 and 424.1)~~

~~E4101.2 Installation.~~

~~Appliances and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Electrically heated appliances and equipment shall be installed with the required clearances to combustible materials. [110.3(B) and 422.17]~~

~~E4101.3 Flexible cords.~~

~~Cord and plug connected appliances shall use cords suitable for the environment and physical conditions likely to be encountered. Flexible cords shall be used only where the appliance is listed to be connected with a flexible cord. The cord shall be identified as suitable in the installation instructions of the appliance manufacturer. Receptacles for cord and plug connected appliances shall be accessible and shall be located to avoid physical damage to the flexible cord. Except for a listed appliance marked to indicate that it is protected by a system of double insulation, the flexible cord supplying an appliance shall terminate in a grounding type attachment plug. A receptacle for a cord and plug connected range hood shall be supplied by an individual branch circuit. Specific appliances have additional requirements as specified in Table E4101.3 (see Section E3909). [422.16(B)(1), (B)(2)]~~

~~TABLE E4101.3~~

~~FLEXIBLE CORD LENGTH~~

| <del>APPLIANCE</del>                                    | <del>MINIMUM CORD LENGTH<br/>(inches)</del> | <del>MAXIMUM CORD LENGTH<br/>(inches)</del> |
|---|---|---|
| <del>Electrically operated in-sink waste disposal</del> | <del>18</del>                               | <del>36</del>                               |
| <del>Built-in dishwasher</del>                          | <del>36</del>                               | <del>48</del>                               |
| <del>Trash compactor</del>                              | <del>36</del>                               | <del>48</del>                               |
| <del>Range hoods</del>                                  | <del>18</del>                               | <del>36</del>                               |

~~For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.~~

~~E4101.4 Overcurrent protection.~~

~~Each appliance shall be protected against overcurrent in accordance with the rating of the appliance and its listing. [110.3(B), 422.11(A)]~~

~~E4101.4.1 Single nonmotor operated appliance.~~

The overcurrent protection for a branch circuit that supplies a single nonmotor-operated appliance shall not exceed that marked on the appliance. Where the overcurrent protection rating is not marked and the appliance is rated at over 13.3 amperes, the overcurrent protection shall not exceed 150 percent of the appliance rated current. Where 150 percent of the appliance rating does not correspond to a standard overcurrent device ampere rating, the next higher standard rating shall be permitted. Where the overcurrent protection rating is not marked and the appliance is rated at 13.3 amperes or less, the overcurrent protection shall not exceed 20 amperes. [422.11(E)]

E4101.5 Disconnecting means.

Each appliance shall be provided with a means to disconnect all ungrounded supply conductors. For fixed electric space heating equipment, means shall be provided to disconnect the heater and any motor controller(s) and supplementary overcurrent protective devices. Switches and circuit breakers used as a disconnecting means shall be of the indicating type. Disconnecting means shall be as set forth in Table E4101.5. (422.30, 422.35, and 424.19)

TABLE E4101.5

DISCONNECTING MEANS [422.31(A), (B), and (C); 422.34; 422.35; 424.19; 424.20; and 440.14]

| DESCRIPTION   | ALLOWED DISCONNECTING MEANS   |
|---|---|
| Permanently connected appliance rated at not over 300 volt-amperes or $\frac{1}{8}$ horsepower. | Branch circuit overcurrent device.  |
| Permanently connected appliances rated in excess of 300 volt-amperes.                           | Branch circuit breaker or switch located within sight of appliance or such devices in any location that are capable of being locked in the open position. The provision for locking or adding a lock to the disconnecting means shall be installed on or at the switch or circuit breaker used as the disconnecting means and shall remain in place with or without the lock installed.   |
| Motor-operated appliances rated over $\frac{1}{8}$ horsepower.                                  | For permanently connected motor-operated appliances with motors rated over $\frac{1}{8}$ horsepower, the branch circuit switch or circuit breaker shall be permitted to serve as the disconnecting means where the switch or circuit breaker is within sight from the appliance. Where the branch circuit switch is not located within sight from the appliance, the disconnecting means shall be one of the following types: a listed motor-circuit switch rated in horsepower, a listed molded case circuit breaker, a listed molded case switch, a listed manual motor controller additionally marked "Suitable as Motor Disconnect" where installed |

~~between the final motor branch circuit short circuit protective device and the motor. For stationary motors rated at 2 hp or less and 300 volts or less, the disconnecting means shall be permitted to be one of the following devices:~~

- ~~1. 1. A general use switch having an ampere rating not less than twice the full load current rating of the motor.~~
- ~~2. 2. On AC circuits, a general use snap switch suitable only for use on AC, not general use AC—DC snap switches, where the motor full load current rating is not more than 80 percent of the ampere rating of the switch.~~
- ~~3. 3. A listed manual motor controller having a horsepower rating not less than the rating of the motor and marked "Suitable as Motor Disconnect".~~

~~The disconnecting means for motor circuits rated 600 volts, nominal, or less shall have an ampere rating not less than 115 percent of the full-load current rating of the motor except that a listed unfused motor circuit switch having a horsepower rating not less than the motor horsepower shall be permitted to have an ampere rating less than 115 percent of the full load current rating of the motor. The disconnecting means shall be installed within sight of the appliance.~~

~~**Exception:** A unit switch with a marked off position that is a part of an appliance and disconnects all ungrounded conductors shall be permitted as the disconnecting means and the switch or circuit breaker serving as the other disconnecting means shall be permitted to be out of sight from the appliance.~~

~~Appliances listed for cord and plug connection. A separable connector or attachment plug and receptacle provided with access.~~

~~Permanently installed heating equipment with motors rated at not over  $\frac{2}{3}$  horsepower with supplementary overcurrent protection. Disconnect, on the supply side of fuses, in sight from the supplementary overcurrent device, and in sight of the heating equipment or, in any location, if capable of being locked in the open position.~~

~~Heating equipment containing motors rated over  $\frac{2}{3}$  horsepower with Disconnect permitted to serve as required disconnect for both the heating equipment and the controller where, on the supply side of fuses, and in sight from the supplementary overcurrent devices, if the~~

supplementary overcurrent protection.

disconnecting means is also in sight from the controller, or is capable of being locked off and simultaneously disconnects the heater, motor controller(s) and supplementary overcurrent protective devices from all ungrounded conductors. The provision for locking or adding a lock to the disconnecting means shall be installed on or at the switch or circuit breaker used as the disconnecting means and shall remain in place with or without the lock installed. The disconnecting means shall have an ampere rating not less than 125 percent of the total load of the motors and the heaters.

Heating equipment containing no motor rated over  $\frac{3}{4}$  horsepower without supplementary overcurrent protection.

Branch circuit switch or circuit breaker where within sight from the heating equipment or capable of being locked off and simultaneously disconnects the heater, motor controller(s) and supplementary overcurrent protective devices from all ungrounded conductors. The provision for locking or adding a lock to the disconnecting means shall be installed on or at the switch or circuit breaker used as the disconnecting means and shall remain in place with or without the lock installed. The disconnecting means shall have an ampere rating not less than 125 percent of the total load of the motors and the heaters.

Heating equipment containing motors rated over  $\frac{3}{4}$  horsepower without supplementary overcurrent protection.

Disconnecting means in sight from motor controller or as provided for heating equipment with motor rated over  $\frac{3}{4}$  horsepower with supplementary overcurrent protection and simultaneously disconnects the heater, motor controller(s) and supplementary overcurrent protective devices from all ungrounded conductors. The provision for locking or adding a lock to the disconnecting means shall be installed on or at the switch or circuit breaker used as the disconnecting means and shall remain in place with or without the lock installed. The disconnecting means shall have an ampere rating not less than 125 percent of the total load of the motors and the heaters.

Air conditioning condensing units and heat pump units.

A readily accessible disconnect *within sight* from unit as the only allowable means.<sup>a</sup>

Appliances and fixed heating equipment with unit switches having a marked OFF position.

Unit switch where an additional individual switch or circuit breaker serves as a redundant disconnecting means.

Thermostatically controlled fixed heating equipment.

Thermostats with a marked OFF position that directly open all ungrounded conductors, which when manually placed in the OFF position are designed so that the circuit cannot be energized

automatically and that are located *within sight* of the equipment controlled.

For SI: 1 horsepower = 0.746 kW.

4. ~~a. The disconnecting means shall be permitted to be installed on or within the unit. It shall not be located on panels designed to allow access to the unit or located so as to obscure the air conditioning equipment nameplate(s).~~

~~E4101.6 Support of ceiling suspended paddle fans.~~

~~Ceiling suspended fans (paddle) shall be supported independently of an outlet box or by a listed outlet box or outlet box system identified for the use and installed in accordance with Section E3905.8. (422.18)~~

~~E4101.7 Snow melting and deicing equipment protection.~~

~~Outdoor receptacles that are not readily accessible and are supplied from a dedicated branch circuit for electric snow melting or deicing equipment shall be permitted to be installed without ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. However, ground fault protection of equipment shall be provided for fixed outdoor electric deicing and snow melting equipment. [210.8(A)(3) Exception, 426.28]~~

## CHAPTER 42 SWIMMING POOLS [ELECTRICAL PROVISIONS]

### RESERVED

#### ~~SECTION 4201~~

##### ~~GENERAL~~

#### ~~E4201.1 Scope.~~

~~The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the construction and installation of electric wiring and equipment associated with all swimming pools, wading pools, decorative pools, fountains, hot tubs and spas, and hydromassage bathtubs, whether permanently installed or storable, and shall apply to metallic auxiliary equipment, such as pumps, filters and similar equipment. Sections E4202 through E4206 provide general rules for permanent pools, spas and hot tubs. Section E4207 provides specific rules for storable pools and storable/portable spas and hot tubs. Section E4208 provides specific rules for spas and hot tubs. Section E4209 provides specific rules for hydromassage bathtubs. (680.1)~~

#### ~~E4201.2 Definitions.~~

~~(680.2)~~

**~~CORD AND PLUG CONNECTED LIGHTING ASSEMBLY.~~** A lighting assembly consisting of a cord and plug-connected transformer and a luminaire intended for installation in the wall of a spa, hot tub, or storable pool.

**~~DRY NICHE LUMINAIRE.~~** A luminaire intended for installation in the floor or wall of a pool, spa or fountain in a niche that is sealed against the entry of water.

**~~FORMING SHELL.~~** A structure designed to support a wet niche luminaire assembly and intended for mounting in a pool or fountain structure.

**~~FOUNTAIN.~~** Fountains, ornamental pools, display pools, and reflection pools. The definition does not include drinking fountains.

**~~HYDROMASSAGE BATHTUB.~~** A permanently installed bathtub equipped with a recirculating piping system, pump, and associated equipment. It is designed so it can accept, circulate and discharge water upon each use.

**~~LOW VOLTAGE CONTACT LIMIT.~~** A voltage not exceeding the following values:

- 1.— 1.15 volts (RMS) for sinusoidal AC
- 2.— 2.21.2 volts peak for nonsinusoidal AC
- 3.— 3.30 volts for continuous DC
- 4.— 4.12.4 volts peak for DC that is interrupted at a rate of 10 to 200 Hz

**~~MAXIMUM WATER LEVEL.~~** The highest level that water can reach before it spills out.

**~~NO NICHE LUMINAIRE.~~** A luminaire intended for installation above or below the water without a niche.

**~~PACKAGED SPA OR HOT TUB EQUIPMENT ASSEMBLY.~~** A factory fabricated unit consisting of water-circulating, heating and control equipment mounted on a common base, intended to operate a spa or hot tub. Equipment may include pumps, air blowers, heaters, luminaires, controls and sanitizer generators.

**~~PERMANENTLY INSTALLED SWIMMING, WADING, IMMERSION AND THERAPEUTIC POOLS.~~** Those that are constructed in the ground or partially in the ground, and all others capable of holding water with a depth greater than 42 inches (1067 mm), and all pools installed inside of a building, regardless of water depth, whether or not served by electrical circuits of any nature.

**~~POOL.~~** Manufactured or field constructed equipment designed to contain water on a permanent or semipermanent basis and used for swimming, wading, immersion, or therapeutic purposes.

**~~POOL COVER, ELECTRICALLY OPERATED.~~** Motor driven equipment designed to cover and uncover the water surface of a pool by means of a flexible sheet or rigid frame.

**SELF-CONTAINED SPA OR HOT TUB.** A factory fabricated unit consisting of a spa or hot tub vessel with all water circulating, heating and control equipment integral to the unit. Equipment may include pumps, air blowers, heaters, luminaires, controls and sanitizer generators.

**SPA OR HOT TUB.** A hydromassage pool, or tub for recreational or therapeutic use, not located in health care facilities, designed for immersion of users, and usually having a filter, heater, and motor driven blower. They are installed indoors or outdoors, on the ground or supporting structure, or in the ground or supporting structure. Generally, a spa or hot tub is not designed or intended to have its contents drained or discharged after each use.

**STORABLE SWIMMING, WADING OR IMMERSION POOLS; OR STORABLE/PORTABLE SPAS AND HOT TUBS.** Those that are constructed on or above the ground and are capable of holding water with a maximum depth of 42 inches (1067 mm), or a pool with nonmetallic, molded polymeric walls or inflatable fabric walls regardless of dimension

**THROUGH-WALL LIGHTING ASSEMBLY.** A lighting assembly intended for installation above grade, on or through the wall of a pool, consisting of two interconnected groups of components separated by the pool wall.

**WET NICHE LUMINAIRE.** A luminaire intended for installation in a forming shell mounted in a pool or fountain structure where the luminaire will be completely surrounded by water.

**SECTION 4202**

**WIRING METHODS FOR POOLS, SPAS, HOT TUBS AND HYDROMASSAGE BATH TUBS**

**E4202.1 General.**

Wiring methods used in conjunction with permanently installed swimming pools, spas, hot tubs or hydromassage bathtubs shall be installed in accordance with Table E4202.1 and Chapter 38 except as otherwise stated in this section. Storable swimming pools shall comply with Section E4207. [680.7; 680.21(A); 680.23(B) and (F); 680.25(A); 680.42; 680.43; and 680.70]

TABLE E4202.1

ALLOWABLE APPLICATIONS FOR WIRING METHODS<sup>a,b,c,d,e,f,g,h,k</sup>

| WIRING LOCATION OR PURPOSE (Application allowed where marked with an "A")     | AC, FMC, NM, SR, SE               | EMT            | ENT            | IMC <sup>i</sup> , RNC <sup>i</sup> , RMC <sup>h</sup> | LFMC | LFNMIC | UF             | MC <sup>i</sup> | FLEXCORD |
|---|-----------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--|------|--------|----------------|-----------------|----------|
| Panelboard(s) that supply pool equipment from service equipment to panelboard | A <sup>b-e</sup> SR not permitted | A <sup>e</sup> | A <sup>b</sup> | A  | —    | A      | A <sup>e</sup> | A <sup>e</sup>  | —        |



- ~~7. c. Limited to use on or within buildings.~~
- ~~8. d. Metal conduit shall be constructed of brass or other approved corrosion resistant metal.~~
- ~~9. e. Limited to where necessary to employ flexible connections at or adjacent to a pool motor.~~
- ~~10. f. Sections installed external to spa or hot tub enclosure limited to individual lengths not to exceed 6 feet. Length not limited inside spa or hot tub enclosure.~~
- ~~11. g. Flexible cord shall be installed in accordance with Section E4202.2.~~
- ~~12. h. Nonmetallic conduit shall be rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit Type PVC or reinforced thermosetting resin conduit Type RTRC.~~
- ~~13. i. Aluminum conduits shall not be permitted in the pool area where subject to corrosion.~~
- ~~14. j. Where installed as direct burial cable or in wet locations, Type MC cable shall be listed and identified for the location.~~
- ~~15. k. See Section E4202.3 for listed, double insulated pool pump motors.~~
- ~~16. l. Limited to use in individual lengths not to exceed 6 feet. The total length of all individual runs of LFMC shall not exceed 10 feet.~~

#### ~~E4202.2 Flexible cords.~~

~~Flexible cords used in conjunction with a pool, spa, hot tub or hydromassage bathtub shall be installed in accordance with the following:~~

- ~~17. 1. For other than underwater luminaires, fixed or stationary equipment shall be permitted to be connected with a flexible cord to facilitate removal or disconnection for maintenance or repair. For other than storable pools, the flexible cord shall not exceed 3 feet (914 mm) in length. Cords that supply swimming pool equipment shall have a copper equipment grounding conductor not smaller than 12 AWG and shall terminate in a grounding type attachment plug. [680.7(A), (B), and (C); 680.21(A)(5)]~~
- ~~18. 2. Other than listed low voltage lighting systems not requiring grounding, wet niche luminaires that are supplied by a flexible cord or cable shall have all exposed noncurrent carrying metal parts grounded by an insulated copper equipment grounding conductor that is an integral part of the cord or cable. Such grounding conductor shall be connected to a grounding terminal in the supply junction box, transformer enclosure, or other enclosure and shall be not smaller than the supply conductors and not smaller than 16 AWG. [680.23(B)(3)]~~

~~19. 3. A listed packaged spa or hot tub installed outdoors that is GFCI protected shall be permitted to be cord and plug connected provided that such cord does not exceed 15 feet (4572 mm) in length. [680.42(A)(2)]~~

~~20. 4. A listed packaged spa or hot tub rated at 20 amperes or less and installed indoors shall be permitted to be cord and plug connected to facilitate maintenance and repair. (680.43 Exception No. 1)~~

~~21. 5. For other than underwater and storable pool lighting luminaire, the requirements of Item 1 shall apply to any cord equipped luminaire that is located within 16 feet (4877 mm) radially from any point on the water surface. [680.22(B)(5)]~~

#### ~~E4202.3 Double insulated pool pumps.~~

~~A listed cord and plug connected pool pump incorporating an approved system of double insulation that provides a means for grounding only the internal and nonaccessible, noncurrent carrying metal parts of the pump shall be connected to any wiring method recognized in Chapter 38 that is suitable for the location. Where the bonding grid is connected to the equipment grounding conductor of the motor circuit in accordance with Section E4204.2, Item 6.1, the branch circuit wiring shall comply with Sections E4202.1 and E4205.5. [680.21(B)]~~

### ~~SECTION E4203~~

#### ~~EQUIPMENT LOCATION AND CLEARANCES~~

##### ~~E4203.1 Receptacle outlets.~~

~~Receptacle outlets shall be installed and located in accordance with Sections E4203.1.1 through E4203.1.5. Distances shall be measured as the shortest path that an appliance supply cord connected to the receptacle would follow without penetrating a floor, wall, ceiling, doorway with hinged or sliding door, window opening, or other effective permanent barrier. [680.22(A)(5)]~~

##### ~~E4203.1.1 Location.~~

~~Receptacles that provide power for water pump motors or other loads directly related to the circulation and sanitation system shall be permitted to be located between 6 feet and 10 feet (1829 mm and 3048 mm) from the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs, where the receptacle is single and of the grounding type and protected by ground fault circuit interrupters.~~

~~Other receptacles on the property shall be located not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs. [680.22(A)(2) and (A)(3)]~~

##### ~~E4203.1.2 Where required.~~

~~At least one 125-volt, 15- or 20-ampere receptacle supplied by a general-purpose branch circuit shall be located a minimum of 6 feet (1829 mm) from and not more than 20 feet (6096 mm) from the inside wall~~

~~of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs. This receptacle shall be located not more than 6 feet, 6 inches (1981 mm) above the floor, platform or grade level serving the pool, spa or hot tub. [680.22(A)(1)]~~

~~E4203.1.3 GFCI protection.~~

~~All 15- and 20-ampere, single-phase, 125-volt receptacles located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs shall be protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter. Outlets supplying pool pump motors supplied from branch circuits rated at 120 volts through 240 volts, single phase, whether by receptacle or direct connection, shall be provided with ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel. [680.21(C) and 680.22(A)(4)]~~

~~E4203.1.4 Indoor locations.~~

~~Receptacles shall be located not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the inside walls of indoor spas and hot tubs. A minimum of one 125-volt receptacle shall be located between 6 feet (1829 mm) and 10 feet (3048 mm) from the inside walls of indoor spas or hot tubs. [680.43(A) and 680.43(A)(1)]~~

~~E4203.1.5 Indoor GFCI protection.~~

~~All 125-volt receptacles rated 30 amperes or less and located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the inside walls of spas and hot tubs installed indoors, shall be protected by ground fault circuit interrupters. [680.43(A)(2)]~~

~~E4203.2 Switching devices.~~

~~Switching devices shall be located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of pools, spas and hot tubs except where separated from the pool, spa or hot tub by a solid fence, wall, or other permanent barrier or the switches are listed for use within 5 feet (1524 mm). Switching devices located in a room or area containing a hydromassage bathtub shall be located in accordance with the general requirements of this code. [680.22(C); 680.43(C); and 680.72]~~

~~E4203.3 Disconnecting means.~~

~~One or more means to simultaneously disconnect all ungrounded conductors for all utilization equipment, other than lighting, shall be provided. Each of such means shall be readily accessible and within sight from the equipment it serves and shall be located at least 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of a pool, spa, or hot tub unless separated from the open water by a permanently installed barrier that provides a 5-foot (1524 mm) or greater reach path. This horizontal distance shall be measured from the water's edge along the shortest path required to reach the disconnect. (680.12)~~

~~E4203.4 Luminaires and ceiling fans.~~

~~Lighting outlets, luminaires, and ceiling suspended paddle fans shall be installed and located in accordance with Sections E4203.4.1 through E4203.4.6. [680.22(B)]~~

~~E4203.4.1 Outdoor location.~~

~~In outdoor pool, outdoor spas and outdoor hot tubs areas, luminaires, lighting outlets, and ceiling-suspended paddle fans shall not be installed over the pool or over the area extending 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of a pool except where no part of the luminaire or ceiling-suspended paddle fan is less than 12 feet (3658 mm) above the maximum water level. [680.22(B)(1)]~~

#### ~~E4203.4.2 Indoor locations.~~

~~In indoor pool areas, the limitations of Section E4203.4.1 shall apply except where the luminaires, lighting outlets and ceiling-suspended paddle fans comply with all of the following conditions:~~

- ~~22. 1. The luminaires are of a totally enclosed type;~~
- ~~23. 2. Ceiling-suspended paddle fans are identified for use beneath ceiling structures such as porches and patios.~~
- ~~24. 3. A ground-fault circuit interrupter is installed in the branch circuit supplying the luminaires or ceiling-suspended paddle fans; and~~
- ~~25. 4. The distance from the bottom of the luminaire or ceiling-suspended paddle fan to the maximum water level is not less than 7 feet, 6 inches (2286 mm). [680.22(B)(2)]~~

#### ~~E4203.4.3 Low-voltage luminaires.~~

~~Listed low-voltage luminaires not requiring grounding, not exceeding the low-voltage contact limit, and supplied by listed transformers or power supplies that comply with Section E4206.1 shall be permitted to be located less than 1.5 m (5 ft) from the inside walls of the pool. [680.22(B)(6)]~~

#### ~~E4203.4.4 Existing lighting outlets and luminaires.~~

~~Existing lighting outlets and luminaires that are located within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs shall be permitted to be located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) vertically above the maximum water level, provided that such luminaires and outlets are rigidly attached to the existing structure and are protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter. [680.22(B)(3)]~~

#### ~~E4203.4.5 Indoor spas and hot tubs.~~

- ~~26. 1. Luminaires, lighting outlets, and ceiling-suspended paddle fans located over the spa or hot tub or within 5 feet (1524 mm) from the inside walls of the spa or hot tub shall be not less than 7 feet, 6 inches (2286 mm) above the maximum water level and shall be protected by a ground-fault circuit interrupter. [680.43(B)(1)(b)]~~

~~Luminaires, lighting outlets, and ceiling-suspended paddle fans that are located 12 feet (3658 mm) or more above the maximum water level shall not require ground-fault circuit interrupter protection. [680.43(B)(1)(a)]~~

~~27. 2. Luminaires protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter and complying with Item 2-1 or 2-2 shall be permitted to be installed less than 7 feet, 6 inches (2286 mm) over a spa or hot tub.~~

- ~~1. 2-1. Recessed luminaires shall have a glass or plastic lens and nonmetallic or electrically isolated metal trim, and shall be suitable for use in damp locations.~~
- ~~2. 2-2. Surface mounted luminaires shall have a glass or plastic globe and a nonmetallic body or a metallic body isolated from contact. Such luminaires shall be suitable for use in damp locations. [680.43(B)(1)(c)]~~

#### ~~E4203.4.6 GFCI protection in adjacent areas.~~

~~Luminaires and outlets that are installed in the area extending between 5 feet (1524 mm) and 10 feet (3048 mm) from the inside walls of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs shall be protected by ground-fault circuit interrupters except where such fixtures and outlets are installed not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) above the maximum water level and are rigidly attached to the structure. [680.22(B)(4)]~~

#### ~~E4203.5 Other outlets.~~

~~Other outlets such as for remote control, signaling, fire alarm and communications shall be not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the inside walls of the pool. Measurements shall be determined in accordance with Section E4203.1. [680.22(D)]~~

#### ~~E4203.6 Overhead conductor clearances.~~

~~Except where installed with the clearances specified in Table E4203.6, the following parts of pools and outdoor spas and hot tubs shall not be placed under existing service drop conductors, overhead service conductor, or any other open overhead wiring; nor shall such wiring be installed above the following:~~

- ~~29. 1. Pools and the areas extending not less than 10 feet, (3048 mm) horizontally from the inside of the walls of the pool.~~
- ~~29. 2. Diving structures and the areas extending not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from the outer edge of such structures.~~
- ~~30. 3. Observation stands, towers, and platforms and the areas extending not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally from the outer edge of such structures.~~

~~Overhead conductors of network powered broadband communications systems shall comply with the provisions in Table E4203.6 for conductors operating at 0 to 750 volts to ground.~~

~~Utility owned, operated and maintained communications conductors, community antenna system coaxial cables and the supporting messengers shall be permitted at a height of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above swimming and wading pools, diving structures, and observation stands, towers, and platforms. [680.8(A), (B), and (C)]~~

TABLE E4203.6 [Table 680.8(A)]

OVERHEAD CONDUCTOR CLEARANCES

|  | <b>INSULATED SUPPLY OR SERVICE DROP CABLES, 0-750 VOLTS TO GROUND, SUPPORTED ON AND CABLED TOGETHER WITH AN EFFECTIVELY GROUNDED BARE MESSENGER OR EFFECTIVELY GROUNDED NEUTRAL CONDUCTOR (feet)</b> | <b>ALL OTHER SUPPLY OR SERVICE DROP CONDUCTORS (feet)</b> |                                 |
|--|--|---|---------------------------------|
|  |  | <b>Voltage to ground</b>                                  |                                 |
|  |  | <b>0-15 kV</b>  | <b>Greater than 15 to 50 kV</b> |
| A. Clearance in any direction to the water level, edge of water surface, base of diving platform, or permanently anchored raft | 22.5   | 25  | 27                              |
| B. Clearance in any direction to the diving platform   | 14.5   | 17  | 18                              |

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

E4203.7 Underground wiring.

Underground wiring shall not be installed under or within the area extending 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of pools and outdoor hot tubs and spas except where the wiring is installed to supply pool, spa or hot tub equipment or where space limitations prevent wiring from being routed 5 feet (1524 mm) or more horizontally from the inside walls. Where installed within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the inside walls, the wiring method shall be a complete raceway system of rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit or a nonmetallic raceway system. Metal conduit shall be corrosion resistant and suitable for the location. The minimum cover depth shall be in accordance with Table E4203.7. (680.10)

TABLE E4203.7 (680.10)

MINIMUM BURIAL DEPTHS

| <b>WIRING METHOD</b> | <b>UNDERGROUND WIRING (inches)</b> |
|----------------------|------------------------------------|
|----------------------|------------------------------------|

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Rigid metal conduit  | 6  |
| Intermediate metal conduit   | 6  |
| Nonmetallic raceways listed for direct burial and under concrete exterior slab not less than 4 inches in thickness and extending not less than 6 inches (162 mm) beyond the underground installation | 6  |
| Nonmetallic raceways listed for direct burial without concrete encasement  | 18 |
| Other approved raceways <sup>a</sup>   | 18 |

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

- ~~31. a. Raceways approved for burial only where concrete encased shall require a concrete envelope not less than 2 inches in thickness.~~

#### **SECTION 4204**

##### **BONDING**

###### **E4204.1 Performance.**

~~The equipotential bonding required by this section shall be installed to reduce voltage gradients in the prescribed areas of permanently installed swimming pools and spas and hot tubs other than the storable/portable type.~~

###### **E4204.2 Bonded parts.**

~~The parts of pools, spas, and hot tubs specified in Items 1 through 7 shall be bonded together using insulated, covered or bare solid copper conductors not smaller than 8 AWG or using rigid metal conduit of brass or other identified corrosion resistant metal. An 8 AWG or larger solid copper bonding conductor provided to reduce voltage gradients in the pool, spa, or hot tub area shall not be required to be extended or attached to remote panelboards, service equipment, or electrodes. Connections shall be made by exothermic welding, by listed pressure connectors or clamps that are labeled as being suitable for the purpose and that are made of stainless steel, brass, copper or copper alloy, machine screw type fasteners that engage not less than two threads or are secured with a nut, thread forming machine screws that engage not less than two threads, or terminal bars. Connection devices or fittings that depend solely on solder shall not be used. Sheet metal screws shall not be used to connect bonding conductors or connection devices. [680.26(B)]~~

- ~~32. 1. Conductive pool shells. Bonding to conductive pool shells shall be provided as specified in Item 1.1 or 1.2. Poured concrete, pneumatically applied or sprayed concrete, and concrete block with painted or plastered coatings shall be considered to~~

be conductive materials because of their water permeability and porosity. Vinyl liners and fiberglass composite shells shall be considered to be nonconductive materials.

~~1. 1.1. Structural reinforcing steel. Unencapsulated structural reinforcing steel shall be bonded together by steel tie wires or the equivalent. Where structural reinforcing steel is encapsulated in a nonconductive compound, a copper conductor grid shall be installed in accordance with Item 1.2.~~

~~2. 1.2. Copper conductor grid. A copper conductor grid shall be provided and shall comply with Items 1.2.1 through 1.2.4:~~

~~1. 1.2.1. It shall be constructed of minimum 8 AWG bare solid copper conductors bonded to each other at all points of crossing.~~

~~2. 1.2.2. It shall conform to the contour of the pool.~~

~~3. 1.2.3. It shall be arranged in a 12-inch (305 mm) by 12-inch (305 mm) network of conductors in a uniformly spaced perpendicular grid pattern with a tolerance of 4 inches (102 mm).~~

~~4. 1.2.4. It shall be secured within or under the pool not more than 6 inches (152 mm) from the outer contour of the pool shell. [680.26(B)(1)]~~

~~33. 2. Perimeter surfaces. The perimeter surface shall extend for 3 feet (914 mm) horizontally beyond the inside walls of the pool and shall include unpaved surfaces, poured concrete surfaces and other types of paving. Perimeter surfaces that extend less than 3 feet (914 mm) beyond the inside wall of the pool and that are separated from the pool by a permanent wall or building 5 feet (1524 mm) or more in height shall require equipotential bonding on the pool side of the permanent wall or building. Bonding to perimeter surfaces shall be provided as specified in Item 2.1 or 2.2 and shall be attached to the pool, spa, or hot tub reinforcing steel or copper conductor grid at a minimum of four points uniformly spaced around the perimeter of the pool, spa, or hot tub. For nonconductive pool shells, bonding at four points shall not be required.~~

**Exceptions:**

~~1. 1. Equipotential bonding of perimeter surfaces shall not be required for spas and hot tubs where all of the following conditions apply:~~

~~1. 1.1. The spa or hot tub is listed as a self-contained spa for above-ground use.~~

~~2. 1.2. The spa or hot tub is not identified as suitable only for indoor use.~~

~~3. 1.3. The installation is in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and is located on or above grade.~~

~~4. 1.4. The top rim of the spa or hot tub is not less than 28 in. (711 mm) above all perimeter surfaces that are within 30 in. (762 mm), measured horizontally from the spa or hot tub. The height of nonconductive external steps for entry to or exit from the self-contained spa is not used to reduce or increase this rim height measurement.~~

~~2. 2.2. The equipotential bonding requirements for perimeter surfaces shall not apply to a listed self-contained spa or hot tub located indoors and installed above a finished floor.~~

~~3. 2.1. Structural reinforcing steel. Structural reinforcing steel shall be bonded in accordance with Item 1.1.~~

~~4. 2.2. Alternate means. Where structural reinforcing steel is not available or is encapsulated in a nonconductive compound, a copper conductor(s) shall be used in accordance with Items 2.2.1 through 2.2.5:~~

~~1. 2.2.1. At least one minimum 8 AWG bare solid copper conductor shall be provided.~~

~~2. 2.2.2. The conductors shall follow the contour of the perimeter surface.~~

~~3. 2.2.3. Splices shall be listed.~~

~~4. 2.2.4. The required conductor shall be 18 to 24 inches (457 to 610 mm) from the inside walls of the pool.~~

~~5. 2.2.5. The required conductor shall be secured within or under the perimeter surface 4 to 6 inches (102 mm to 152 mm) below the subgrade. [680.26(B)(2)]~~

~~34. 3. Metallic components. All metallic parts of the pool structure, including reinforcing metal not addressed in Item 1.1, shall be bonded. Where reinforcing steel is encapsulated with a nonconductive compound, the reinforcing steel shall not be required to be bonded. [680.26(B)(3)]~~

~~35. 4. Underwater lighting. All metal forming shells and mounting brackets of no niche luminaires shall be bonded. [680.26(B)(4)]~~

~~**Exception:** Listed low voltage lighting systems with nonmetallic forming shells shall not require bonding. [680.26(B)(4) Exception]~~

~~36. 5. Metal fittings. All metal fittings within or attached to the pool structure shall be bonded. Isolated parts that are not over 4 inches (102 mm) in any dimension and do not penetrate into the pool structure more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) shall not require bonding. [680.26(B)(5)]~~

~~37. 6. Electrical equipment. Metal parts of electrical equipment associated with the pool water circulating system, including pump motors and metal parts of equipment associated with pool covers, including electric motors, shall be bonded. [680.26(B)(6)]~~

~~**Exception:** Metal parts of listed equipment incorporating an approved system of double insulation shall not be bonded. [680.26(B)(6) Exception]~~

~~1. 6.1. Double insulated water pump motors. Where a double insulated water pump motor is installed under the provisions of this item, a solid 8 AWG copper conductor of sufficient length to make a bonding connection to a replacement motor shall be extended from the bonding grid to an accessible point in the vicinity of the pool pump motor. Where there is no connection between the swimming pool bonding grid and the equipment grounding system for the premises, this bonding conductor shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor of the motor circuit. [680.26(B)(6)(a)]~~

~~2. 6.2. Pool water heaters. For pool water heaters rated at more than 50 amperes and having specific instructions regarding bonding and grounding, only those parts designated to be bonded shall be bonded and only those parts designated to be grounded shall be grounded. [680.26(B)(6)(b)]~~

~~38. 7. All fixed metal parts including, but not limited to, metal sheathed cables and raceways, metal piping, metal awnings, metal fences and metal door and window frames. [680.26(B)(7)]~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

~~1. 1. Those separated from the pool by a permanent barrier that prevents contact by a person shall not be required to be bonded. [680.26(B)(7) Exception No. 1]~~

~~2. 2. Those greater than 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of the pool shall not be required to be bonded. [680.26(B)(7) Exception No. 2]~~

~~3. 3. Those greater than 12 feet (3658 mm) measured vertically above the maximum water level of the pool, or as measured vertically above any observation stands, towers, or platforms, or any diving structures, shall not be required to be bonded. [680.26(B)(7) Exception No. 3]~~

~~E4204.3 Pool water.~~

~~Where none of the bonded parts is in direct connection with the pool water, the pool water shall be in direct contact with an approved corrosion resistant conductive surface that exposes not less than 9 in.<sup>2</sup> (5800 mm<sup>2</sup>) of surface area to the pool water at all times. The conductive surface shall be located where it is not exposed to physical damage or dislodgement during usual pool activities, and it shall be bonded in accordance with Section E4204.2.~~

#### E4204.4 Bonding of outdoor hot tubs and spas.

Outdoor hot tubs and spas shall comply with the bonding requirements of Sections E4204.1 through E4204.3. Bonding by metal to metal mounting on a common frame or base shall be permitted. The metal bands or hoops used to secure wooden staves shall not be required to be bonded as required in Section E4204.2. [680.42 and 680.42(B)]

#### E4204.5 Bonding of indoor hot tubs and spas.

The following parts of indoor hot tubs and spas shall be bonded together:

39. 1. All metal fittings within or attached to the hot tub or spa structure. [680.43(D)(1)]
40. 2. Metal parts of electrical equipment associated with the hot tub or spa water circulating system, including pump motors unless part of a listed self-contained spa or hot tub. [680.43(D)(2)]
41. 3. Metal raceway and metal piping that are within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the inside walls of the hot tub or spa and that are not separated from the spa or hot tub by a permanent barrier. [680.43(D)(3)]
42. 4. All metal surfaces that are within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the inside walls of the hot tub or spa and that are not separated from the hot tub or spa area by a permanent barrier. [680.43(D)(4)]

**Exception:** Small conductive surfaces not likely to become energized, such as air and water jets and drain fittings, where not connected to metallic piping, towel bars, mirror frames, and similar nonelectrical equipment, shall not be required to be bonded. [680.43(D)(4) Exception]

43. 5. Electrical devices and controls that are not associated with the hot tubs or spas and that are located less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from such units. [680.43(D)(5)]

#### E4204.5.1 Methods.

All metal parts associated with the hot tub or spa shall be bonded by any of the following methods:

44. 1. The interconnection of threaded metal piping and fittings. [680.43(E)(1)]
45. 2. Metal to metal mounting on a common frame or base. [680.43(E)(2)]
46. 3. The provision of an insulated, covered or bare solid copper bonding jumper not smaller than 8 AWG. It shall not be the intent to require that the 8 AWG or larger solid copper bonding conductor be extended or attached to any remote panelboard, service equipment, or any electrode, but only that it shall be employed to eliminate voltage gradients in the hot tub or spa area as prescribed. [680.43(E)(3)]

#### E4204.5.2 Connections.

Connections to bonded parts shall be made in accordance with Section E3406.13.1.

**SECTION E4205**  
**GROUNDING**

E4205.1 Equipment to be grounded.

The following equipment shall be grounded:

- ~~47. 1. Through wall lighting assemblies and underwater luminaires other than those low-voltage lighting products listed for the application without a grounding conductor.~~
- ~~48. 2. All electrical equipment located within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the inside wall of the pool, spa or hot tub.~~
- ~~49. 3. All electrical equipment associated with the recirculating system of the pool, spa or hot tub.~~
- ~~50. 4. Junction boxes.~~
- ~~51. 5. Transformer and power supply enclosures.~~
- ~~52. 6. Ground fault circuit interrupters.~~
- ~~53. 7. Panelboards that are not part of the service equipment and that supply any electrical equipment associated with the pool, spa or hot tub. (680.7)~~

E4205.2 Luminaires and related equipment.

Other than listed low voltage luminaires not requiring grounding, all through wall lighting assemblies, wet niche, dry niche, or no niche luminaires shall be connected to an insulated copper equipment grounding conductor sized in accordance with Table E3908.12 but not smaller than 12 AWG. The equipment grounding conductor between the wiring chamber of the secondary winding of a transformer and a junction box shall be sized in accordance with the overcurrent device in such circuit. The junction box, transformer enclosure, or other enclosure in the supply circuit to a wet niche or no niche luminaire and the field wiring chamber of a dry niche luminaire shall be grounded to the equipment grounding terminal of the panelboard. The equipment grounding terminal shall be directly connected to the panelboard enclosure. The equipment grounding conductor shall be installed without joint or splice. [680.23(F)(2) and 680.23(F)(2) Exception]

**Exceptions:**

- ~~54. 1. Where more than one underwater luminaire is supplied by the same branch circuit, the equipment grounding conductor, installed between the junction boxes, transformer enclosures, or other enclosures in the supply circuit to wet niche luminaires, or between the field wiring compartments of dry niche luminaires, shall be permitted to be terminated on grounding terminals. [680.23(F)(2)(a)]~~

~~55. 2. Where an underwater luminaire is supplied from a transformer, ground fault circuit interrupter, clock operated switch, or a manual snap switch that is located between the panelboard and a junction box connected to the conduit that extends directly to the underwater luminaire, the equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted to terminate on grounding terminals on the transformer, ground fault circuit interrupter, clock operated switch enclosure, or an outlet box used to enclose a snap switch. [680.23(F)(2)(b)]~~

#### ~~E4205.3 Nonmetallic conduit.~~

~~Where a nonmetallic conduit is installed between a forming shell and a junction box, transformer enclosure, or other enclosure, a 8 AWG insulated copper bonding jumper shall be installed in this conduit except where a listed low voltage lighting system not requiring grounding is used. The bonding jumper shall be terminated in the forming shell, junction box or transformer enclosure, or ground fault circuit interrupter enclosure. The termination of the 8 AWG bonding jumper in the forming shell shall be covered with, or encapsulated in, a listed potting compound to protect such connection from the possible deteriorating effect of pool water. [680.23(B)(2)(b)]~~

#### ~~E4205.4 Flexible cords.~~

~~Other than listed low voltage lighting systems not requiring grounding, wet niche luminaires that are supplied by a flexible cord or cable shall have all exposed noncurrent carrying metal parts grounded by an insulated copper equipment grounding conductor that is an integral part of the cord or cable. This grounding conductor shall be connected to a grounding terminal in the supply junction box, transformer enclosure, or other enclosure. The grounding conductor shall not be smaller than the supply conductors and not smaller than 16 AWG. [680.23(B)(3)]~~

#### ~~E4205.5 Motors.~~

~~Pool associated motors shall be connected to an insulated copper equipment grounding conductor sized in accordance with Table E3908.12, but not smaller than 12 AWG. Where the branch circuit supplying the motor is installed in the interior of a one family dwelling or in the interior of accessory buildings associated with a one family dwelling, using a cable wiring method permitted by Table E4202.1, an uninsulated equipment grounding conductor shall be permitted provided that it is enclosed within the outer sheath of the cable assembly. [680.21(A)(1) and (A)(4)]~~

#### ~~E4205.6 Feeders.~~

~~An equipment grounding conductor shall be installed with the feeder conductors between the grounding terminal of the pool equipment panelboard and the grounding terminal of the applicable service equipment. The equipment grounding conductor shall be insulated, shall be sized in accordance with Table E3908.12, and shall be not smaller than 12 AWG.~~

#### ~~E4205.6.1 Separate buildings.~~

~~A feeder to a separate building or structure shall be permitted to supply swimming pool equipment branch circuits, or feeders supplying swimming pool equipment branch circuits, provided that the grounding arrangements in the separate building meet the requirements of Section E3607.3. The feeder equipment grounding conductor shall be an insulated conductor. (680.25(B)(2))~~

~~E4205.7Cord-connected equipment.~~

~~Where fixed or stationary equipment is connected with a flexible cord to facilitate removal or disconnection for maintenance, repair, or storage, as provided in Section E4202.2, the equipment grounding conductors shall be connected to a fixed metal part of the assembly. The removable part shall be mounted on or bonded to the fixed metal part. (680.7(C))~~

~~E4205.8Other equipment.~~

~~Other electrical equipment shall be grounded in accordance with Section E3908. (Article 250, Parts V, VI, and VII; and 680.6)~~

#### ~~SECTION E4206~~

##### ~~EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION~~

~~E4206.1Transformers and power supplies.~~

~~Transformers and power supplies used for the supply of underwater luminaires, together with the transformer or power supply enclosure, shall be listed for swimming pool and spa use. The transformer or power supply shall incorporate either a transformer of the isolated winding type with an ungrounded secondary that has a grounded metal barrier between the primary and secondary windings, or a transformer that incorporates an approved system of double insulation between the primary and secondary windings. (680.23(A)(2))~~

~~E4206.2Ground fault circuit interrupters.~~

~~Ground fault circuit interrupters shall be self-contained units, circuit breaker types, receptacle types or other approved types. (680.5)~~

~~E4206.3Wiring on load side of ground fault circuit interrupters and transformers.~~

~~For other than grounding conductors, conductors installed on the load side of a ground fault circuit interrupter or transformer used to comply with the provisions of Section E4206.4, shall not occupy raceways, boxes, or enclosures containing other conductors except where the other conductors are protected by ground fault circuit interrupters or are grounding conductors. Supply conductors to a feed-through type ground fault circuit interrupter shall be permitted in the same enclosure. Ground fault circuit interrupters shall be permitted in a panelboard that contains circuits protected by other than ground fault circuit interrupters. (680.23(F)(3))~~

~~E4206.4Underwater luminaires.~~

The design of an underwater luminaire supplied from a branch circuit either directly or by way of a transformer or power supply meeting the requirements of Section E4206.1, shall be such that, where the fixture is properly installed without a ground fault circuit interrupter, there is no shock hazard with any likely combination of fault conditions during normal use (not relamping). In addition, a ground fault circuit interrupter shall be installed in the branch circuit supplying luminaires operating at more than the low voltage contact limit, such that there is no shock hazard during relamping. The installation of the ground fault circuit interrupter shall be such that there is no shock hazard with any likely fault condition combination that involves a person in a conductive path from any ungrounded part of the branch circuit or the luminaire to ground. Compliance with this requirement shall be obtained by the use of a listed underwater luminaire and by installation of a listed ground fault circuit interrupter in the branch circuit or a listed transformer or power supply for luminaires operating at more than the low voltage contact limit. Luminaires that depend on submersion for safe operation shall be inherently protected against the hazards of overheating when not submerged. [680.23(A)(1), (A)(3), (A)(7) and (A)(8)]

#### E4206.4.1 Maximum voltage.

Luminaires shall not be installed for operation on supply circuits over 150 volts between conductors. [680.23(A)(4)]

#### E4206.4.2 Luminaire location.

Luminaires mounted in walls shall be installed with the top of the fixture lens not less than 18 inches (457 mm) below the normal water level of the pool, except where the luminaire is listed and identified for use at a depth of not less than 4 inches (102 mm) below the normal water level of the pool. A luminaire facing upward shall have the lens adequately guarded to prevent contact by any person or shall be listed for use without a guard. [680.23(A)(5) and (A)(6)]

#### E4206.5 Wet niche luminaires.

Forming shells shall be installed for the mounting of all wet niche underwater luminaires and shall be equipped with provisions for conduit entries. Conduit shall extend from the forming shell to a suitable junction box or other enclosure located as provided in Section E4206.9. Metal parts of the luminaire and forming shell in contact with the pool water shall be of brass or other approved corrosion resistant metal. [680.23(B)(1)]

The end of flexible cord jackets and flexible cord conductor terminations within a luminaire shall be covered with, or encapsulated in, a suitable potting compound to prevent the entry of water into the luminaire through the cord or its conductors. If present, the grounding connection within a luminaire shall be similarly treated to protect such connection from the deteriorating effect of pool water in the event of water entry into the luminaire. [680.23(B)(4)]

~~Luminaires shall be bonded to and secured to the forming shell by a positive locking device that ensures a low resistance contact and requires a tool to remove the luminaire from the forming shell. [680.23(B)(5)]~~

~~E4206.5.1 Servicing.~~

~~All wet niche luminaires shall be removable from the water for inspection, relamping, or other maintenance. The forming shell location and length of cord in the forming shell shall permit personnel to place the removed luminaire on the deck or other dry location for such maintenance. The luminaire maintenance location shall be accessible without entering or going into the pool water. [680.23(B)(6)]~~

~~E4206.6 Dry niche luminaires.~~

~~Dry niche luminaires shall have provisions for drainage of water. Other than listed low voltage luminaires not requiring grounding, a dry niche luminaire shall have means for accommodating one equipment grounding conductor for each conduit entry. Junction boxes shall not be required but, if used, shall not be required to be elevated or located as specified in Section E4206.9 if the luminaire is specifically identified for the purpose. [680.23(C)(1) and (C)(2)]~~

~~E4206.7 No niche luminaires.~~

~~No niche luminaires shall be listed for the purpose and shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of Section E4206.5. Where connection to a forming shell is specified, the connection shall be to the mounting bracket. [680.23(D)]~~

~~E4206.8 Through wall lighting assembly.~~

~~A through wall lighting assembly shall be equipped with a threaded entry or hub, or a nonmetallic hub, for the purpose of accommodating the termination of the supply conduit. A through wall lighting assembly shall meet the construction requirements of Section E4205.4 and be installed in accordance with the requirements of Section E4206.5. Where connection to a forming shell is specified, the connection shall be to the conduit termination point. [680.23(E)]~~

~~E4206.9 Junction boxes and enclosures for transformers or ground fault circuit interrupters.~~

~~Junction boxes for underwater luminaires and enclosures for transformers and ground fault circuit interrupters that supply underwater luminaires shall comply with the following: [680.24(A)]~~

~~E4206.9.1 Junction boxes.~~

~~A junction box connected to a conduit that extends directly to a forming shell or mounting bracket of a no niche luminaire shall be:~~

~~56. 1. Listed as a swimming pool junction box; [680.24(A)(1)]~~

~~57. 2. Equipped with threaded entries or hubs or a nonmetallic hub; [680.24(A)(1)(1)]~~

- ~~58. 3. Constructed of copper, brass, suitable plastic, or other approved corrosion-resistant material; [680.24(A)(1)(2)]~~
- ~~59. 4. Provided with electrical continuity between every connected metal conduit and the grounding terminals by means of copper, brass, or other approved corrosion-resistant metal that is integral with the box; and [680.24(A)(1)(3)]~~
- ~~60. 5. Located not less than 4 inches (102 mm), measured from the inside of the bottom of the box, above the ground level, or pool deck, or not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the maximum pool water level, whichever provides the greatest elevation, and shall be located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the inside wall of the pool, unless separated from the pool by a solid fence, wall or other permanent barrier. Where used on a lighting system operating at the low-voltage contact limit or less, a flush deck box shall be permitted provided that an approved potting compound is used to fill the box to prevent the entrance of moisture; and the flush deck box is located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the inside wall of the pool. [680.24(A)(2)]~~

~~E4206.9.2 Other enclosures.~~

~~An enclosure for a transformer, ground-fault circuit interrupter or a similar device connected to a conduit that extends directly to a forming shell or mounting bracket of a no-niche luminaire shall be:~~

- ~~61. 1. Listed and labeled for the purpose, comprised of copper, brass, suitable plastic, or other approved corrosion-resistant material; [680.24(B)(1)]~~
- ~~62. 2. Equipped with threaded entries or hubs or a nonmetallic hub; [680.24(B)(2)]~~
- ~~63. 3. Provided with an approved seal, such as duct seal at the conduit connection, that prevents circulation of air between the conduit and the enclosures; [680.24(B)(3)]~~
- ~~64. 4. Provided with electrical continuity between every connected metal conduit and the grounding terminals by means of copper, brass or other approved corrosion-resistant metal that is integral with the enclosures; and [680.24(B)(4)]~~
- ~~65. 5. Located not less than 4 inches (102 mm), measured from the inside bottom of the enclosure, above the ground level or pool deck, or not less than 8 inches (203 mm) above the maximum pool water level, whichever provides the greater elevation, and shall be located not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) from the inside wall of the pool, except where separated from the pool by a solid fence, wall or other permanent barrier. [680.24(B)(2)]~~

~~E4206.9.3 Protection of junction boxes and enclosures.~~

~~Junction boxes and enclosures mounted above the grade of the finished walkway around the pool shall not be located in the walkway unless afforded additional protection, such as by location under diving boards or adjacent to fixed structures. [680.24(C)]~~

~~E4206.9.4 Grounding terminals.~~

~~Junction boxes, transformer and power supply enclosures, and ground fault circuit interrupter enclosures connected to a conduit that extends directly to a forming shell or mounting bracket of a niche luminaire shall be provided with grounding terminals in a quantity not less than the number of conduit entries plus one. [680.24(D)]~~

~~E4206.9.5 Strain relief.~~

~~The termination of a flexible cord of an underwater luminaire within a junction box, transformer or power supply enclosure, ground fault circuit interrupter, or other enclosure shall be provided with a strain relief. [680.24(E)]~~

~~E4206.10 Underwater audio equipment.~~

~~Underwater audio equipment shall be identified for the purpose. [680.27(A)]~~

~~E4206.10.1 Speakers.~~

~~Each speaker shall be mounted in an approved metal forming shell, the front of which is enclosed by a captive metal screen, or equivalent, that is bonded to and secured to the forming shell by a positive locking device that ensures a low resistance contact and requires a tool to open for installation or servicing of the speaker. The forming shell shall be installed in a recess in the wall or floor of the pool. [680.27(A)(1)]~~

~~E4206.10.2 Wiring methods.~~

~~Rigid metal conduit of brass or other identified corrosion resistant metal, rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit, rigid thermosetting resin conduit or liquid tight flexible nonmetallic conduit (LFNC-B) shall extend from the forming shell to a suitable junction box or other enclosure as provided in Section E4206.9. Where rigid nonmetallic conduit or liquid tight flexible nonmetallic conduit is used, an 8 AWG solid or stranded insulated copper bonding jumper shall be installed in this conduit with provisions for terminating in the forming shell and the junction box. The termination of the 8 AWG bonding jumper in the forming shell shall be covered with, or encapsulated in, a suitable potting compound to protect such connection from the possible deteriorating effect of pool water. [680.27(A)(2)]~~

~~E4206.10.3 Forming shell and metal screen.~~

~~The forming shell and metal screen shall be of brass or other approved corrosion resistant metal. Forming shells shall include provisions for terminating an 8 AWG copper conductor. [680.27(A)(3)]~~

~~E4206.11 Electrically operated pool covers.~~

The electric motors, controllers, and wiring for pool covers shall be located not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the inside wall of the pool except where separated from the pool by a wall, cover, or other permanent barrier. Electric motors installed below grade level shall be of the totally enclosed type. The electric motor and controller shall be connected to a branch circuit protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter. The device that controls the operation of the motor for an electrically operated pool cover shall be located so that the operator has full view of the pool. [680.27(B)(1) and (B)(2)]

#### ~~E4206.12 Electric pool water heaters.~~

~~Electric pool water heaters shall have the heating elements subdivided into loads not exceeding 48 amperes and protected at not more than 60 amperes. The ampacity of the branch circuit conductors and the rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices shall be not less than 125 percent of the total nameplate load rating. (680.9)~~

#### ~~E4206.13 Pool area heating.~~

~~The provisions of Sections E4206.13.1 through E4206.13.3 shall apply to all pool deck areas, including a covered pool, where electrically operated comfort heating units are installed within 20 feet (6096 mm) of the inside wall of the pool. [680.27(C)]~~

#### ~~E4206.13.1 Unit heaters.~~

~~Unit heaters shall be rigidly mounted to the structure and shall be of the totally enclosed or guarded types. Unit heaters shall not be mounted over the pool or within the area extending 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of a pool. [680.27(C)(1)]~~

#### ~~E4206.13.2 Permanently wired radiant heaters.~~

~~Electric radiant heaters shall be suitably guarded and securely fastened to their mounting devices. Heaters shall not be installed over a pool or within the area extending 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the inside walls of the pool and shall be mounted not less than 12 feet (3658 mm) vertically above the pool deck. [680.27(C)(2)]~~

#### ~~E4206.13.3 Radiant heating cables prohibited.~~

~~Radiant heating cables embedded in or below the deck shall be prohibited. [680.27(C)(3)]~~

### ~~SECTION E4207~~

#### ~~STORABLE SWIMMING POOLS, STORABLE SPAS, AND STORABLE HOT TUBS~~

#### ~~E4207.1 Pumps.~~

~~A cord and plug connected pool filter pump for use with storable pools shall incorporate an approved system of double insulation or its equivalent and shall be provided with means for grounding only the internal and nonaccessible noncurrent carrying metal parts of the appliance.~~

~~The means for grounding shall be an equipment grounding conductor run with the power supply conductors in a flexible cord that is properly terminated in a grounding type attachment plug having a fixed grounding contact. Cord and plug connected pool filter pumps shall be provided with a ground-fault circuit interrupter that is an integral part of the attachment plug or located in the power supply cord within 12 inches (305 mm) of the attachment plug.~~

~~{680.31}~~

~~E4207.2 Ground fault circuit interrupters required.~~

~~Electrical equipment, including power supply cords, used with storable pools shall be protected by ground fault circuit interrupters. 125 volt, 15 and 20 ampere receptacles located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of the inside walls of a storable pool, storable spa, or storable hot tub shall be protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter. In determining these dimensions, the distance to be measured shall be the shortest path that the supply cord of an appliance connected to the receptacle would follow without passing through a floor, wall, ceiling, doorway with hinged or sliding door, window opening, or other effective permanent barrier. {680.32}~~

~~E4207.3 Luminaires.~~

~~Luminaires for storable pools, storable spas, and storable hot tubs shall not have exposed metal parts and shall be listed for the purpose as an assembly. In addition, luminaires for storable pools shall comply with the requirements of Section E4207.3.1 or E4207.3.2. {680.33}~~

~~E4207.3.1 Within the low voltage contact limit.~~

~~A luminaire installed in or on the wall of a storable pool shall be part of a cord and plug connected lighting assembly. The assembly shall:~~

- ~~66. 1. Have a luminaire lamp that is suitable for the use at the supplied voltage;~~
- ~~67. 2. Have an impact resistant polymeric lens, luminaire body, and transformer enclosure;~~
- ~~68. 3. Have a transformer meeting the requirements of Section E4206.1 with a primary rating not over 150 volts; and~~
- ~~69. 4. Have no exposed metal parts. {680.33(A)}~~

~~E4207.3.2 Over the low voltage contact limit but not over 150 volts.~~

~~A lighting assembly without a transformer or power supply, and with the luminaire lamp(s) operating at over the low voltage contact limit, but not over 150 volts, shall be permitted to be cord and plug connected where the assembly is listed as an assembly for the purpose and complies with all of the following:~~

- ~~70. 1. It has an impact resistant polymeric lens and luminaire body.~~

~~71. 2. A ground fault circuit interrupter with open neutral conductor protection is provided as an integral part of the assembly.~~

~~72. 3. The luminaire lamp is permanently connected to the ground fault circuit interrupter with open neutral protection.~~

~~73. 4. It complies with the requirements of Section E4206.4.~~

~~74. 5. It has no exposed metal parts. [680.33(B)]~~

#### ~~E4207.4 Receptacle locations.~~

~~Receptacles shall be located not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) from the inside walls of a storable pool, storable spa or storable hot tub. In determining these dimensions, the distance to be measured shall be the shortest path that the supply cord of an appliance connected to the receptacle would follow without passing through a floor, wall, ceiling, doorway with hinged or sliding door, window opening, or other effective permanent barrier. (680.34)~~

#### ~~E4207.5 Clearances.~~

~~Overhead conductor installations shall comply with Section E4203.6 and underground conductor installations shall comply with Section E4203.7.~~

#### ~~E4207.6 Disconnecting means.~~

~~Disconnecting means for storable pools and storable/portable spas and hot tubs shall comply with Section E4203.3.~~

#### ~~E4207.7 Ground fault circuit interrupters.~~

~~Ground fault circuit interrupters shall comply with Section E4206.2.~~

#### ~~E4207.8 Grounding of equipment.~~

~~Equipment shall be grounded as required by Section E4205.1.~~

#### ~~E4207.9 Pool water heaters.~~

~~Electric pool water heaters shall comply with Section E4206.12.~~

### ~~SECTION E4208~~

#### ~~SPAS AND HOT TUBS~~

#### ~~E4208.1 Ground fault circuit interrupters.~~

~~The outlet(s) that supplies a self-contained spa or hot tub, or a packaged spa or hot tub equipment assembly, or a field-assembled spa or hot tub with a heater load of 50 amperes or less, shall be protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter. (680.44)~~

~~A listed self-contained unit or listed packaged equipment assembly marked to indicate that integral ground fault circuit interrupter protection is provided for all electrical parts within the unit or assembly, including pumps, air blowers, heaters, lights, controls, sanitizer generators and wiring, shall not require that the outlet supply be protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter. (680.44(A))~~

~~E4208.2 Electric water heaters.~~

~~Electric spa and hot tub water heaters shall be listed and shall have the heating elements subdivided into loads not exceeding 48 amperes and protected at not more than 60 amperes. The ampacity of the branch circuit conductors, and the rating or setting of overcurrent protective devices, shall be not less than 125 percent of the total nameplate load rating. (680.9)~~

~~E4208.3 Underwater audio equipment.~~

~~Underwater audio equipment used with spas and hot tubs shall comply with the provisions of Section E4206.10. (680.43(G))~~

~~E4208.4 Emergency switch for spas and hot tubs.~~

~~A clearly labeled emergency shutoff or control switch for the purpose of stopping the motor(s) that provides power to the recirculation system and jet system shall be installed at a point that is readily accessible to the users, adjacent to and within sight of the spa or hot tub and not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) away from the spa or hot tub. This requirement shall not apply to single family dwellings. (680.41)~~

~~**SECTION E4209**~~

~~**HYDROMASSAGE BATHTUBS**~~

~~E4209.1 Ground fault circuit interrupters.~~

~~Hydromassage bathtubs and their associated electrical components shall be supplied by an individual branch circuit(s) and protected by a readily accessible ground fault circuit interrupter. All 125 volt, single phase receptacles not exceeding 30 amperes and located within 6 feet (1829 mm) measured horizontally of the inside walls of a hydromassage tub shall be protected by a ground fault circuit interrupter(s). (680.71)~~

~~E4209.2 Other electric equipment.~~

~~Luminaires, switches, receptacles, and other electrical equipment located in the same room, and not directly associated with a hydromassage bathtub, shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this code relative to the installation of electrical equipment in bathrooms. (680.72)~~

~~E4209.3 Accessibility.~~

~~Hydromassage bathtub electrical equipment shall be accessible without damaging the building structure or building finish. Where the hydromassage bathtub is cord and plug connected with the supply~~

receptacle accessible only through a service access opening, the receptacle shall be installed so that its face is within direct view and not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from the plane of the opening. (680.73)

#### ~~E4209.4~~ Bonding.

Both metal piping systems and grounded metal parts in contact with the circulating water shall be bonded together using an insulated, covered or bare solid copper bonding jumper not smaller than 8 AWG. The bonding jumper shall be connected to the terminal on the circulating pump motor that is intended for this purpose. The bonding jumper shall not be required to be connected to a double insulated circulating pump motor. The 8 AWG or larger solid copper bonding jumper shall be required for equipotential bonding in the area of the hydromassage bathtub and shall not be required to be extended or attached to any remote panelboard, service equipment, or any electrode. Where a double-insulated circulating pump motor is used, the 8 AWG or larger solid copper bonding jumper shall be long enough to terminate on a replacement nondouble-insulated pump motor and shall be terminated to the equipment grounding conductor of the branch circuit for the motor. (680.74)

## CHAPTER 43 CLASS 2 REMOTE-CONTROL, SIGNALING AND POWER-LIMITED CIRCUITS

### RESERVED

#### ~~SECTION 4301~~

##### ~~GENERAL~~

#### ~~E4301.1~~ Scope.

This chapter contains requirements for power supplies and wiring methods associated with Class 2 remote control, signaling, and power limited circuits that are not an integral part of a device or appliance. Other classes of remote control, signaling and power limited conductors shall comply with Article 725 of NFPA 70. (725.1)

#### ~~E4301.2~~ Definitions.

**~~CLASS 2 CIRCUIT.~~** That portion of the wiring system between the load side of a Class 2 power source and the connected equipment. Due to its power limitations, a Class 2 circuit considers safety from a fire initiation standpoint and provides acceptable protection from electric shock. (725.2)

**~~REMOTE CONTROL CIRCUIT.~~** Any electrical circuit that controls any other circuit through a relay or an equivalent device. (Article 100)

**~~SIGNALING CIRCUIT.~~** Any electrical circuit that energizes signaling equipment. (Article 100)

#### ~~SECTION 4302~~

##### ~~POWER SOURCES~~

~~E4302.1 Power sources for Class 2 circuits.~~~~The power source for a Class 2 circuit shall be one of the following:~~

- ~~1. 1. A listed Class 2 transformer.~~
- ~~2. 2. A listed Class 2 power supply.~~
- ~~3. 3. Other listed equipment marked to identify the Class 2 power source.~~
- ~~4. 4. Listed information technology (computer) equipment limited power circuits.~~
- ~~5. 5. A dry cell battery provided that the voltage is 30 volts or less and the capacity is equal to or less than that available from series connected No. 6 carbon zinc cells. [725.121(A)]~~

~~E4302.2 Interconnection of power sources.~~~~A Class 2 power source shall not have its output connections paralleled or otherwise interconnected with another Class 2 power source except where listed for such interconnection. [725.121(B)]~~~~**SECTION E4303**~~~~**WIRING METHODS**~~~~E4303.1 Wiring methods on supply side of Class 2 power source.~~~~Conductors and equipment on the supply side of the power source shall be installed in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Chapters 34 through 41. Transformers or other devices supplied from electric light or power circuits shall be protected by an over current device rated at not over 20 amperes. The input leads of a transformer or other power source supplying Class 2 circuits shall be permitted to be smaller than 14 AWG, if not over 12 inches (305 mm) long and if the conductor insulation is rated at not less than 600 volts. In no case shall such leads be smaller than 18 AWG. (725.127 and 725.127 Exception)~~~~E4303.2 Wiring methods and materials on load side of the Class 2 power source.~~~~Class 2 cables installed as wiring within buildings shall be listed as being resistant to the spread of fire and listed as meeting the criteria specified in Sections E4303.2.1 through E4303.2.3. Cables shall be marked in accordance with Section E4303.2.4. Cable substitutions as described in Table E4303.2 and wiring methods covered in Chapter 38 shall also be permitted. (725.130 (B); 725.135 (A), (C), (G) and (M); 725.154; Table 725.154; Figure 725.154 (A); and 725.179)~~~~TABLE E4303.2~~~~CABLE USES AND PERMITTED SUBSTITUTIONS [Figure 725.154(A)]~~

| <del>CABLE</del> | <del>USE</del> | <del>PERMITTED SUBSTITUTIONS<sup>a</sup></del> |
|------------------|----------------|--|
|------------------|----------------|--|

| TYPE |                            |   |
|------|----------------------------|---|
| CL2P | Class 2 Plenum Cable       | <del>CMP, CL3P</del>  |
| CL2R | Class 2 Plenum Cable       | <del>CMP, CL3P, CL2P, CMR, CL3R</del>                                     |
| CL2  | Class 2 Cable              | <del>CMP, CL3P, CL2P, CMR, CL3R, CL2R CMG, CM, CL3</del>                  |
| CL2X | Class 2 Cable, Limited Use | <del>CMP, CL3P, CL2P, CMR, CL3R, CL2R, CMG, CM, CL3, CL2, CMX, CL3X</del> |

6.—a. For identification of cables other than Class 2 cables, see NFPA 70.

~~E4303.2.1 Type CL2P cables.~~

~~Cables installed in ducts, plenums and other spaces used to convey environmental air shall be Type CL2P cables listed as being suitable for the use and listed as having adequate fire resistant and low smoke-producing characteristics. [725.179(A)]~~

~~E4303.2.2 Type CL2 cables.~~

~~Cables for general purpose use, shall be listed as being resistant to the spread of fire and listed for the use. [725.179 (C)]~~

~~E4303.2.3 Type CL2X cables.~~

~~Type CL2X limited use cable shall be listed as being suitable for use in dwellings and for the use and in raceways and shall also be listed as being flame retardant. Cables with a diameter of less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) shall be permitted to be installed without a raceway. [725.179 (D)]~~

~~E4303.2.4 Type CL2R cables.~~

~~Cables installed in a vertical run in a shaft or installed from floor to floor shall be listed as suitable for use in a vertical run in a shaft or from floor to floor and shall also be listed as having fire resistant characteristics capable of preventing fire from being conveyed from floor to floor. [725.179(B)]~~

~~**Exception:** CL2X and CL3X cables with a diameter of less than  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) and CL2 and CL3 cables shall be permitted in risers in one and two family dwelling units. [725.154 (G)]~~

~~E4303.2.5 Marking.~~

~~Cables shall be marked in accordance with Table E4303.2.5. Voltage ratings shall not be marked on cables.~~

~~Table E4303.2.5 [Table 725.179(K)]~~

## CABLE MARKING

| CABLE MARKING | TYPE                       |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| CL2P          | Class 2 plenum cable       |
| CL2R          | Class 2 riser cable        |
| CL2           | Class 2 cable              |
| CL2X          | Class 2 cable, limited use |

**SECTION E4304****INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS****E4304.1 Separation from other conductors.**

In cables, compartments, enclosures, outlet boxes, device boxes, and raceways, conductors of Class 2 circuits shall not be placed in any cable, compartment, enclosure, outlet box, device box, raceway, or similar fitting with conductors of electric light, power, Class 1 and nonpower limited fire alarm circuits. [725.136]

**Exceptions:**

7. ~~1. Where the conductors of the electric light, power, Class 1 and nonpower limited fire alarm circuits are separated by a barrier from the Class 2 circuits. In enclosures, Class 2 circuits shall be permitted to be installed in a raceway within the enclosure to separate them from Class 1, electric light, power and nonpower limited fire alarm circuits. [725.136(B)]~~
8. ~~2. Class 2 conductors in compartments, enclosures, device boxes, outlet boxes and similar fittings where electric light, power, Class 1 or nonpower limited fire alarm circuit conductors are introduced solely to connect to the equipment connected to the Class 2 circuits. The electric light, power, Class 1 and nonpower limited fire alarm circuit conductors shall be routed to maintain a minimum of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) separation from the conductors and cables of the Class 2 circuits; or the electric light power, Class 1 and nonpower limited fire alarm circuit conductors operate at 150 volts or less to ground and the Class 2 circuits are installed using Types CL3, CL3R, or CL3P or permitted substitute cables, and provided that these Class 3 cable conductors extending beyond their jacket are separated by a minimum of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch (6.4 mm) or by a nonconductive sleeve or nonconductive barrier from all other conductors. [725.136(D)]~~

**E4304.2 Other applications.**

Conductors of Class 2 circuits shall be separated by not less than 2 inches (51 mm) from conductors of any electric light, power, Class 1 or nonpowerlimited fire alarm circuits except where one of the following conditions is met:

9. ~~1. All of the electric light, power, Class 1 and nonpowerlimited fire alarm circuit conductors are in raceways or in metal sheathed, metal clad, nonmetallic sheathed or Type UF cables.~~
10. ~~2. All of the Class 2 circuit conductors are in raceways or in metal sheathed, metal clad, nonmetallic sheathed or Type UF cables. [725.136(I)]~~

~~E4304.3 Class 2 circuits with communications circuits.~~

~~Where Class 2 circuit conductors are in the same cable as communications circuits, the Class 2 circuits shall be classified as communications circuits and shall meet the requirements of Article 800 of NFPA 70. The cables shall be listed as communications cables or multipurpose cables.~~

~~Cables constructed of individually listed Class 2 and communications cables under a common jacket shall be permitted to be classified as communications cables. The fire resistance rating of the composite cable shall be determined by the performance of the composite cable. [725.139(D)]~~

~~E4304.4 Class 2 cables with other circuit cables.~~

~~Jacketed cables of Class 2 circuits shall be permitted in the same enclosure or raceway with jacketed cables of any of the following:~~

11. ~~1. Power limited fire alarm systems in compliance with Article 760 of NFPA 70.~~
12. ~~2. Nonconductive and conductive optical fiber cables in compliance with Article 770 of NFPA 70.~~
13. ~~3. Communications circuits in compliance with Article 800 of NFPA 70.~~
14. ~~4. Community antenna television and radio distribution systems in compliance with Article 820 of NFPA 70.~~
15. ~~5. Low power, network powered broadband communications in compliance with Article 830 of NFPA 70. [725.139(E)]~~

~~E4304.5 Installation of conductors and cables.~~

~~Cables and conductors installed exposed on the surface of ceilings and sidewalls shall be supported by the building structure in such a manner that they will not be damaged by normal building use. Such cables shall be supported by straps, staples, hangers, cable ties or similar fittings designed so as to not damage the cable. Nonmetallic cable ties and other nonmetallic accessories used to secure and support cables located in stud cavity and joist space plenums shall be listed as having low smoke and heat release properties. The installation shall comply with Table E3802.1 regarding cables run parallel with~~

~~framing members and furring strips. The installation of wires and cables shall not prevent access to equipment nor prevent removal of panels, including suspended ceiling panels. Raceways shall not be used as a means of support for Class 2 circuit conductors, except where the supporting raceway contains conductors supplying power to the functionally associated equipment controlled by the Class 2 conductors. [300.22 (C) (1) and 725.24]~~